

# Forgotten Books

— [www.forgottenbooks.com](http://www.forgottenbooks.com) —

Copyright © 2016 FB &c Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical reviews and certain other noncommercial uses permitted by copyright law.

A CONCISE GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE



# A CONCISE GRAMMAR

OF THE

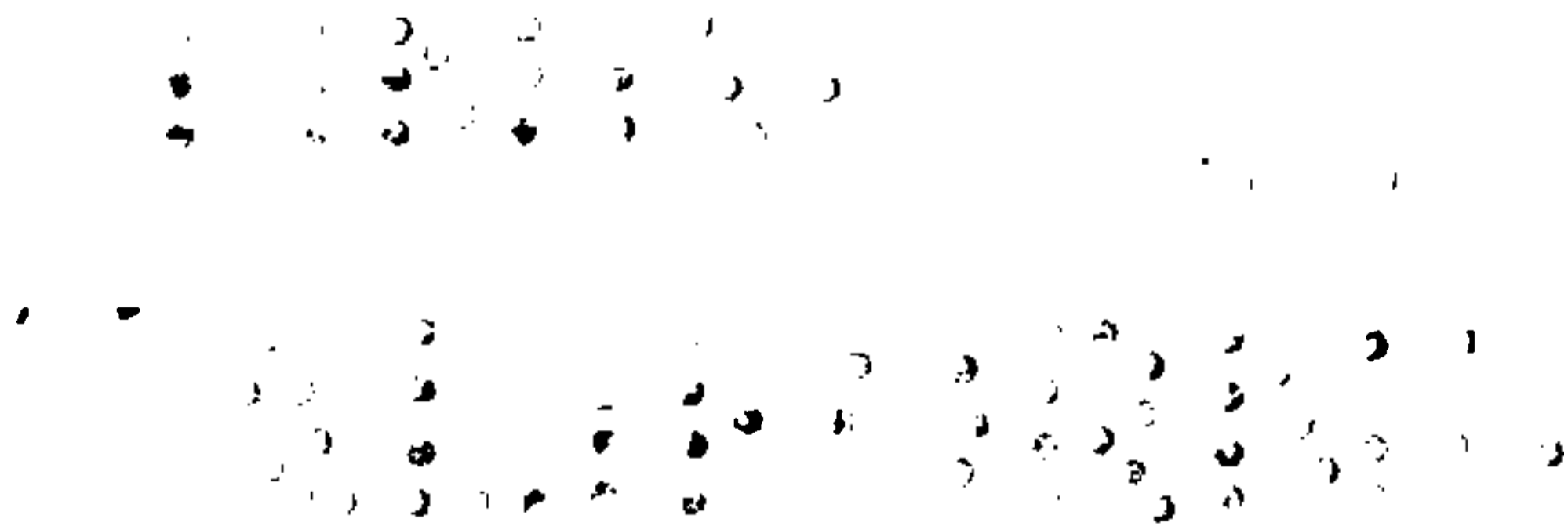
# RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

*Russia, 1916*

BY

LEONARD A. MAGNUS, LL.B.

*Editor and translator of the "Armament of Igor,"  
"Russian Folk Tales," &c.*



LONDON

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.

1916

PRESERVATION  
COPY ADDED  
ORIGINAL TO BE  
RETAINED

JAN 27 1994

~~835  
M 99~~

LONDON:  
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMIT  
DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDM

WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED  
DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDMILL LANE, LONDON, E.C. 4A

# CONTENTS.

1910

MAY

	PAGE
Preface . . . . .	xvii
Introduction . . . . .	xix
Alphabet . . . . .	xxi
Russian Script and Italic . . . . .	xxiii
Specimen of Handwriting . . . . .	xxiv
§ 1. The Use and Value of the Letters . . . . .	1
§ 2. The Vowels—	
(1) Hard and Soft Vowels . . . . .	2
(2) а and я . . . . .	2
(3) э, е and ѣ . . . . .	3
(4) ы, и, і, ѵ . . . . .	3
(5) о and ө . . . . .	4
(6) у and ю . . . . .	5
(7) ъ and ъ . . . . .	5
§ 3. The Consonants—Voiced and Unvoiced . . . . .	6
§ 4. General Observations on the Consonants . . . . .	6
§ 5. The Hard and Soft Consonants.—Preliminary . . . . .	8
(1) The Labials п, б, м, в, ф, θ . . . . .	8
(2) The Dentals т, д, н . . . . .	9
(3) The Gutturals к, г, х . . . . .	10
(4) The Sibilants and Compound Conso- nants с, з, ш, ж, щ, ц, ч . . . . .	11
(5) The Liquids л and р . . . . .	13
§ 6. Conglomerated Consonants when Final . . . . .	14
§ 7. Transliteration into Russian . . . . .	14
§ 8. Russian Diphthongs . . . . .	15
§ 9. The Change of е to ө . . . . .	16

## ACCIDENCE.

§ 10. The Parts of Speech . . . . .	19
-------------------------------------	----

## THE NOUN.

§ 11. Preliminary Observations.—The Genders . . . . .	20
§ 12. The Declensions . . . . .	21

	PAGE
§ 13. The Cases . . . . .	22
§ 14. The Numbers . . . . .	23
§ 15. Hard and Soft Nouns . . . . .	24
§ 16. The First Declension—Masculines . . . . .	25
§ 17. The First Declension—Neuters . . . . .	26
§ 18. The Second Declension in а and я . . . . .	28
§ 19. The Third Declension in и and мя—Mascu- lines of the Third Declension—пусть . . . . .	30
§ 20. Feminines of the Third Declension . . . . .	30
§ 21. Neuters in мя of the Third Declension . . . . .	32
§ 22. Remains of Older Forms in the Third Declension—	
(1) мать, дочь : . . . . .	32
(2) дитя . . . . .	33
§ 23. Discussion of the Nouns . . . . .	33
§ 24. Remarks on the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension—	
(1) Genitive and locative singular in “у” The “u” declension . . . . .	34
(2) Plurals in -ья . . . . .	35
(3) Plurals in -а . . . . .	36
(4) Genitive plural in -ъ . . . . .	37
(5) Nominative singular in -инь . . . . .	38
(6) Irregular formations . . . . .	39
§ 25. Accentuation of the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension . . . . .	39
§ 26. Remarks on the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension—	
(1) Genitive plural in -ъ and -ей . . . . .	41
(2) Neuters in -ие and feminines in -ия . . . . .	42
(3) Mixed masculine and neuter declension —nouns in -ище, -ко and others . . . . .	43
(4) Plurals in -ья . . . . .	43
(5) Irregular forms—	
(а) Obsolete, небо, чудо, -ята . . . . .	44
(β) Duals . . . . .	45

	PAGE
§ 27. Accentuation of the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension . . . . .	45
§ 28. Remarks on the Second Declension—	
(1) Genitive plural in -ь and -ей . . . . .	46
(2) Contraction of -ою, -ею to -оѣ, -еѣ . . . . .	47
(3) Masculine nouns in second declension . . . . .	47
(4) Nouns in -ія . . . . .	47
§ 29. Accentuation of Second Declension . . . . .	47
§ 30. Remarks on the Third Declension . . . . .	49
§ 31. Accentuation of the Third Declension . . . . .	49
§ 32. The “Euphonic” Vowels о, е and ѳ—	
I. Extrusion of ѣ and ѣ when unaccented . . . . .	50
II. Insertion of о and е for euphony . . . . .	52
III. What heavy final consonants are allowed . . . . .	54
IV. Remarks on the third declension . . . . .	55

### THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 33. Preliminary Observations—	
(1) The syntactical importance of the adjective . . . . .	55
(2) The use of possessive and descriptive adjectives . . . . .	56
(3) No distinction of gender in the plural . . . . .	56
(4) The predicative adjective . . . . .	56
(5) The determinative and simple adjective . . . . .	56
(6) The accentuation of the adjective . . . . .	58
(7) No third declension adjectives . . . . .	58
(8) The unnecessary grammarians’ spellings in the determinatives . . . . .	58
(9) The substantival use of adjectives . . . . .	58
§ 34. The Simple, Possessive and Descriptive Adjectives—	
(1) Examples of simple adjectives . . . . .	58
(2) Formation of possessive adjectives and examples . . . . .	59
(3) Formation of descriptive adjectives . . . . .	61



	PAGE
§ 35. The Determinative Adjectives—	
(1) The scheme and formation . . . . .	62
(2) Examples . . . . .	64
§ 36. The Formation of the Predicatives—	
(1) Where no corresponding predicative exists . . . . .	68
(2) Where no corresponding determinative exists . . . . .	68
(3) Possessives . . . . .	68
(4) Instances of accentuation of predica- tives . . . . .	68
§ 37. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Formation—	
(1) Comparative and superlative, how formed . . . . .	70
(2) The superlative . . . . .	70
(3) Substitutes for the superlative . . . . .	71
§ 38. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Rules—	
I. Use of the uninflected form . . . . .	72
II. The four simple inflected superlatives	73
III. Adjectives with no determinative com- parative . . . . .	73
IV. Use of prefix <i>по</i> with indeclinable comparative . . . . .	73
V. Translation of “than” . . . . .	74
§ 39. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Examples—	
I. The regular form <i>-ѣе, -ѣйшій</i> , and accentuation . . . . .	74
II. The shorter form <i>-ѣе, -ѣшій</i> . . . . .	74
III. Comparison with words from different roots . . . . .	77

#### THE PRONOUN.

§ 40. (1) Preliminary observations . . . . .	77
(2) Table of Russian pronouns and adverbs .	78–9

	PAGE
§ 41. Examples of the Pronouns—	
I. The interrogative pronouns . . . .	80
Remarks on кой, чей, который, сколько	81
II. The relatives кто, который . . . .	81
III. The demonstratives тотъ, этотъ, оный, сей; remarks on the use of them . . . .	82
IV. The universals каждый, весь, всякій . . . .	83
V. The personal pronouns and possessives	84
(1) Use of свой and себя, ся . . . .	85
(2) Use of егó, etc., with preposi- tions. . . . .	85
(3) Instrumental fem. sing. in -ой	86
(4) When personal pronouns are used . . . . .	86
VI. The indefinite pronouns . . . . .	86
VII. The negative pronouns. The double negative in Russian . . . . .	87
VIII. The pronouns of identity, and самъ and самы́й . . . . .	87
IX. The pronouns of difference, друго́й, иной, прóчие . . . . .	88

## THE VERB.

§ 42. (1) Table of Russian Verbs . . . . .	89
(2) Preliminary observations—	
(i) The parts of the Russian verb. . . . .	90
(ii) The deficiencies of the Russian verb and the aspects . . . . .	91
(iii) How the parts are formed . . . . .	92
(iv) Verbs original and derivative . . . . .	92
§ 43. The Russian Infinitive — Consonantal and Vocalic . . . . .	93
§ 44. The forms derived from the Infinitive . . . . .	94
§ 45. The formations from the 1st person sing. Present . . . . .	96
§ 46. The laws of the accentuation of the verbs . . . . .	96

	PAGE
§ 47. Paradigms of желать and вёрить . . . . .	98
§ 48. The Four Conjugations.—Some Phonetic Rules . . . . .	99
§ 49. The First Conjugation. The Present forms—	
I. Guttural roots, infinitives in -чь . . . . .	100
II. Nasal roots, infinitives in -ять; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т . . . . .	101
III. Sibilant roots, infinitives in -сти́, -сть . . . . .	103
IV. Liquid roots. (1) Infinitives in -ереть, -елеть; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т . . . . .	104
(2) Infinitives in -ороть, -олоть . . . . .	104
V. Dental roots, infinitives in -сти́, -сть . . . . .	105
идти́, честь, състь . . . . .	106
Accentuation of past tense . . . . .	107
VI. Roots in в, жить, плыть, слыть . . . . .	107
VII. Consonantal roots with suffixal а in infinitive . . . . .	108
§ 50. The Second Conjugation in -нуть. Preliminary.	
I. “Instantaneous” verbs and their accentuation . . . . .	109
II. “Inchoative” verbs and their accentuation . . . . .	110
III. Examples of conjugation . . . . .	111
§ 51. The Third Conjugation.—Preliminary . . . . .	112
§ 52. The Original Verbs of the Third Conjugation.	
I. Those in which termination is directly to root—	
(1) Liquid roots, олоть, ороть . . . . .	112
(2) Vocalic roots (α) in “а” знать, сиять . . . . .	113
(β) Roots in и, битъ, etc., past part. pass. in т . . . . .	113
(γ) Roots in у, дуть, past part. pass. in т . . . . .	113
(δ) Roots in ѣ, смѣть . . . . .	113
(ε) Verbs in ыть and пѣть, past part. pass. in т . . . . .	114
II. Verbs with suffixal infinitive in -ать, -ять, and accentuation . . . . .	115
слать, стлать, дыхать, etc. . . . .	116

	PAGE
§ 53. Derivative Verbs of the Third Conjugation—	
(1) From nouns in -ать, -ять . . . . .	116
(2) Inceptives in -ѣть . . . . .	116
Accentuation of them . . . . .	117
(3) I. Derivatives in -овать, and accentua- tion. Derivatives in -ировать, and accentuation . . . . .	117
II. Original verbs in -овать, -евать . . . . .	118
(4) Iteratives in -ать, -ять . . . . .	119
(5) Iteratives in -ывать, -ивать . . . . .	119
давать, ставить, знать . . . . .	120
§ 54. The Fourth Conjugation. Preliminary —	
Infinitive in -ѣть, -ить . . . . .	120
§ 55. The Fourth Conjugation. Original Verbs—	
I. In -ать, -ять, гнать, стоять, спать . . . . .	121
II. In -ѣть, -ать, and accentuation . . . . .	122
Past tense in -ѣль . . . . .	123
хотѣть, бѣжать . . . . .	123
Accentuation of original verbs in -ить . . . . .	124
§ 56. The Fourth Conjugation. Derivative Verbs.	
Accentuation and origins . . . . .	125
§ 57. Anomalous Verbs—	
I. Mixed conjugations. The same root throughout. реветѣть, хотѣть, -дѣть, стать, посѣтитѣть, обратитѣть, -шибитѣть . . . . .	126
II. Using different roots. идти, быть (and its compounds), ѣхать . . . . .	127
III. Obsolete forms. здать, verbs in “m,” вѣмъ, есмь, ѣсть, дать . . . . .	128
§ 58. The Aspects of the Verbs. Preliminary . . . . .	130
Perfective—Imperfective—Abstract—Itera- tive — Instantaneous — Causative — In- ceptive . . . . .	131
Verbs having no perfective . . . . .	132

	PAGE
§ 59. The Formation of the Aspects—	
I. (1) From original verbs . . . . .	133
Monosyllabic roots. Those naturally	
perfective . . . . .	133
Iteratives in -а́ть, -ва́ть . . . . .	134
When compounded . . . . .	134
-честь and -чита́ть . . . . .	135
(2) Second conjugation in -ну́ть . . . . .	135
The “instantaneous” aspect . . . . .	135
(3) Third conjugation. Prepositions	
to form perfective . . . . .	135
Iteratives in -ыва́ть, -а́ть . . . . .	136
двѣ́гать, дви́гать, etc. . . . .	137
(4) Fourth conjugation. Original verbs	
in -и́ть, -ѣ́ть. Imperfective in -я́ть.	
Abstract forms in -а́ть, -я́ть, -и́ть. . . . .	137
When compounded, abstract is	
imperfective . . . . .	138
Iterative forms in -а́ть, -я́ть . . . . .	139
Iteratives in -ива́ть, -ыва́ть . . . . .	140
II. The formation of perfective of derivative	
verbs . . . . .	140
With prepositions . . . . .	140
III. Aspects formed from a different root.	
Perfective and imperfective, concrete	
and abstract . . . . .	141
IV. The aspects of compounded verbs in -и́ть,	
-я́ть, -а́ть, -ну́ть, -ыва́ть . . . . .	142
V. Causatives and inceptives in -и́ть and -ѣ́ть . . . . .	145
VI. По and за as forming depreciatory, or	
diminutive, and inceptive aspects . . . . .	146
§ 60. Reflexive and Passive Verbs—другъ дру́га . . . . .	147

## THE NUMERALS.

PAGE

§ 61.	Preliminary . . . . .	149
§ 62.	I. The numerals 1–10 . . . . .	150
	Declension of <i>о́ба</i> . . . . .	152
	II. The numerals 11–90 . . . . .	152
	III. The numerals 100–1,000,000.— <i>сто</i> . . . . .	153
	The compound numerals.— <i>ты́сяча</i> . . . . .	154
	IV. Notes—	
	(1) Frequency . . . . .	155
	(2) Distributives . . . . .	155
	(3) Nought . . . . .	155
	(4) Noun governed by last numeral . . . . .	155
	(5) Decimals . . . . .	156
	(6) Compound ordinals and examples . . . . .	156
	(7) Declension of <i>два</i> with nouns— <i>дво́и</i> , etc. . . . .	157
	(8) Fractions— <i>полови́на</i> , <i>полтора́</i> ; <i>пол-</i> <i>compounds</i> . . . . .	158
	(9) Dates— <i>годъ</i> and <i>лѣто</i> . . . . .	160
§ 63.	THE ADVERBS . . . . .	160
§ 64.	THE PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	161
§ 65.	THE CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .	161
§ 66.	THE INTERJECTIONS . . . . .	161

## SYNTAX.

§ 67.	Preliminary—Concord—Order of Words— Predominance of Adjective . . . . .	162
§ 68.	The Article . . . . .	163
§ 69.	The Cases—	
	I. Nominative . . . . .	163
	II. Vocative . . . . .	164
	III. Accusative as object . . . . .	164
	Special uses: duration . . . . .	165

	PAGE
IV. Genitive . . . . .	165
(i) Ownership — Possessive adjectives — Subjective genitive and objective always follows	166
(ii) Partitive . . . . .	170
(iii) In impersonal sentences. . . . .	171
(iv) Replaced by dative . . . . .	171
(v) After comparatives . . . . .	172
(vi) Objective case . . . . .	172
(vii) After certain adjectives and verbs	172
(viii) Dates . . . . .	173
(ix) Partitive sense . . . . .	173
(x) Descriptive . . . . .	173
V. The Dative . . . . .	174
VI. Instrumental . . . . .	175
(1) Agent . . . . .	175
(2) Means . . . . .	175
(3) Predicative . . . . .	176
(4) Manner . . . . .	176
(5) Measurement . . . . .	176
(6) Words of quality . . . . .	177
(7) Time . . . . .	177
(8) After certain verbs . . . . .	177
VII. The Locative. . . . .	177
§ 70. Table of Prepositions and Particles . . . . .	178-9
§ 71. The Prepositions and Particles.—Preliminary	180
§ 72. The Prepositions governing only the Accusative	181
§ 73 (1). The Prepositions governing only the Genitive . . . . .	182
§ 73 (2). The Prepositions governing only the Dative . . . . .	187
§ 74. The Prepositions governing only the Instrumental and между . . . . .	188
§ 7. The Prepositions governing only the Locative	189
§ 7. The Prepositions подъ, предъ and за . . . . .	189
§ 7. The Prepositions въ, о and на . . . . .	193
§ 7. The Prepositions по and съ. . . . .	198
§ 7. The Verbal Prefixes воз, вы, пере, пре, разъ	201
§ 80. The Accentuation of Prepositions and Particles	204

	PAGE
§ 81. The Numerals—	
I. The date, days, months, etc. . . . .	206
II. Age . . . . .	208
III. Adjectives compounded with numerals . . . . .	209
IV. The time of day . . . . .	209
V. Fractions . . . . .	210
VI. Russian money . . . . .	212
VII. Frequencies . . . . .	212
VIII. One cardinal now obsolete . . . . .	213
IX. Cards . . . . .	213
§ 82. The Pronouns—	
I. Interrogative . . . . .	214
II. Relative . . . . .	214
III. Indefinite pronouns. Use of НИ . . . . .	215
IV. The reciprocal pronouns . . . . .	216
V. The negative pronouns . . . . .	217
§ 83. The Russian Appellatives—	
I. In conversation — ВЫ, ТЫ, БАРИНЪ, patronymics. . . . .	218
II. Between masters and servants . . . . .	220
III. Addressing meetings . . . . .	221
IV. Titles . . . . .	221
V. Addressing letters . . . . .	223
§ 84. Interrogative sentences — ЛИ, РАЗВѢ . . . . .	225
§ 85. Negative sentences . . . . .	225
§ 86. The Verb “to be,” omission of “copula” . . . . .	228
§ 87. The Verb “to have” . . . . .	230
§ 88. Special use of Infinitive . . . . .	231
§ 89. The Gerundives and Participles—	
I. The gerundives . . . . .	232
II. The participles — past and present. -МЫЙ = -ble. . . . .	232
§ 90. Subordinate Clauses—	
I. Temporal . . . . .	234
II. Causal . . . . .	235
III. Conditional . . . . .	235
IV. Final. (1) Purpose. (2) Effect . . . . .	237
V. Reported Speech . . . . .	238



	PAGE
§ 91. The Imperative. Full forms . . . . .	241
Adverbial, Preterite and Conditional uses—	
пошелъ . . . . .	241
§ 92. Further illustrations of the Aspects . . . . .	243
§ 93. The Auxiliaries . . . . .	247
давнó, б́уду, стáну, б́удто . . . . .	247
тóлько что, бывáло . . . . .	248
б́ыло, the future perfect . . . . .	249
§ 94. The Impersonal Construction—	
I. Impersonal verbs . . . . .	249
II. Translation of “one” (says) . . . . .	250
III. Impersonal construction of active verbs	250
§ 95. Apocopated forms of some Verbs . . . . .	250
§ 96. The Reflexive Verbs . . . . .	251
Passives, Causatives, Deponents, “Middle”	
Voice . . . . .	252
§ 97. Russian Relationships . . . . .	253
Table of Kinship . . . . .	258
Table of Affinity . . . . .	259
ETYMOLOGY.—Preliminary.—Accentuation . . . . .	260
§ 98. The Nouns—	
I. Foreign terminations in common use	260
II. Disused or dead suffixes . . . . .	261
III. Patronymics . . . . .	262
IV. Termination to denote the feminine	262
V. Abstract nouns . . . . .	262
VI. Verbal nouns . . . . .	263
VII. The agent or implement . . . . .	264
VIII. Diminutives—	
(1) Masculines of first declension	265
(2) Neuters of first declension . . . . .	265
(3) Feminines and masculines of	
second declension . . . . .	266
IX. Augmentatives . . . . .	267
X. Miscellaneous . . . . .	267
§ 99. Adjectival Suffixes . . . . .	268
§ 100. Verbal Formations . . . . .	270



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



# INTRODUCTION.

---

THE modern Russian language is spoken over the whole extent of the Russian Empire. It originated as the dialect of the *Principality* of Moscow and the Republic of Nóvgorod, and thus at first embraced all the provinces or governments of Russia proper, except Volhynia, Podolia, Poltáva and Southern Russia (where a dialect called Little-Russian is spoken). In Minsk, Gródno and Vilna another dialect is spoken, called White-Russian.

Russian belongs to the Slavonic branch of the Aryan or Indo-European family of languages; other kindred tongues are Polish, Čech or Bohemian, Moravian, Serbian and Bulgarian.

The Slavonic peoples mostly belong to the Orthodox or Eastern Church. They received their alphabet, their civilisation and their ritual from Constantinople, and hence mostly use modernized or adapted forms of the Cyrillic alphabet, which was created by Saint Cyril and Saint Method in the ninth century on the basis of the Greek alphabet.

Those Slav peoples who belong to the Roman confession use the Latin or Roman alphabet, as we do;

but, to provide symbols for the many sounds, very numerous diacritical marks have had to be added, e.g. *ą, ę, ć, ń, ż, ź, ń, é*, etc. The Cyrillic alphabet was invented expressly for the Slavonic languages ; and, though the signs are at first strange, they express the sounds more accurately, and, in reality, aid the learner considerably.

The first task of the student of Russian is to familiarise himself with the alphabet, *both* printed and written, so that he may read and write it with ease and promptitude.

---

*In English the vowels a, e, i, o, u have, since Shakespeare's time, been grotesquely diverted from their original value and the general Continental use. The reader must understand that in this Grammar a, e, i, o, u are used as in Italian or German : i.e. ah, cortège, pique, poke, rule ; except where specially stated otherwise.*

## THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET.

The Russian Alphabet consists of thirty-six letters. Of these there are twelve vowels, а, е, и, ѣ, у, о, у, ы, ё, э, ю, я; twenty-one consonants, б, в, г, д, ж, з, к, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф, х, ц, ч, ш, щ, ѳ; one semi-vowel, ѳ (i krátkoyi); and two letters which have no sound-value of their own, ъ, ь—they influence the softening or hardening of the consonant immediately preceding them.

Printed.		Italic.		Name.	Corresponding Value.	Trans- literation.
Caps.	Ord.	Caps.	Ord.			
А	а	А	а	а (às in <i>ah</i> )	а ( <i>father</i> )	а
Б	б	Б	б	be (like English <i>bay</i> )	b	b
В	в	В	в	ve (as in Eng. <i>vale</i> )	v	v
Г	г	Г	г	ge (like English <i>gay</i> )	g*	g
Д	д	Д	д	de (like English <i>day</i> )	d	d
Е	е	Е	е	ye (like English <i>yea</i> )	ye	e or ye
Ж	ж	Ж	ж	zhe (like French <i>geai</i> )	{ ž (like s in } { <i>leis i'e</i> ) }	ž
З	з	З	з	ze (like English <i>zay</i> )	z	z
И	и	И	и	i (like English 'e)	{ i (as in } { <i>pique</i> ) }	i
И̇	и̇	И̇	и̇	и краткое (i krátkoyi)	{ y (as in } { <i>yet</i> ) }	y
І	і	І	і	и съ точкой (i stóckoy)	{ i (as in } { <i>pique</i> ) }	i
К	к	К	к	ka (like English <i>kah</i> )	k	k
Л	л	Л	л	ell	l	l

\* Always "hard" as in Give.

Printed.		Italic.		Name.	Corresponding Value.	Traliter
Caps.	Ord.	Caps.	Ord.			
<b>М</b>	м	<b>М</b>	м	em	m	n
<b>Н</b>	н	<b>Н</b>	н	en	n	
<b>О</b>	о	<b>О</b>	о	o (as in <i>stock</i> )	o	
<b>П</b>	п	<b>П</b>	п	pe (as in <i>pay</i> )	p	l
<b>Р</b>	р	<b>Р</b>	р	err (as in Scotch <i>air</i> )	r	l
<b>С</b>	с	<b>С</b>	с	ess	s	s
<b>Т</b>	т	<b>Т</b>	т	te (as in <i>tay</i> )	t	
<b>У</b>	у	<b>У</b>	у	u (as in <i>rule</i> )	u	l
<b>Ф</b>	ф	<b>Ф</b>	ф	eff	f	
<b>Х</b>	х	<b>Х</b>	х	khah	{ch in <i>loch</i> {or German <i>ch</i>	k
<b>Ц</b>	ц	<b>Ц</b>	ц	tse (as in <i>tsay</i> )	ts	t
<b>Ч</b>	ч	<b>Ч</b>	ч	če (as in <i>chaste</i> )	English <i>ch</i>	č
<b>Ш</b>	ш	<b>Ш</b>	ш	ša (as in <i>shah</i> )		
<b>Щ</b>	щ	<b>Щ</b>	щ	šča	{sc rapidly {combined*}	š
<b>Ъ</b>	ъ	<b>Ъ</b>	ъ	yerr (еръ)	mute	
<b>Ы</b>	ы	<b>Ы</b>	ы	yerý (еры́)	{y like i in {swim}	y
<b>Ь</b>	ь	<b>Ь</b>	ь	yerĩ (ерь)	mute	
<b>Ѣ</b>	ѣ	<b>Ѣ</b>	ѣ	yatĩ (ятъ)	{like {Russian e}	
<b>Э</b>	э	<b>Э</b>	э	e (like English <i>ě</i> )	{like <i>ě</i> in { <i>ell</i> }	
<b>Ю</b>	ю	<b>Ю</b>	ю	yu (like English <i>yu</i> )	yu	y
<b>Я</b>	я	<b>Я</b>	я	ya (like English <i>yah!</i> )	ya	y
<b>Ѧ</b>	Ѧ	<b>Ѧ</b>	Ѧ	fitá	f	
<b>Ѧ</b>	Ѧ	<b>Ѧ</b>	Ѧ	ížit̄sa	like n	

\* Sounded like shch in *freshcheese*.

## RUSSIAN SCRIPT AND ITALIC.

Cursive.	Italic.	Cursive.	Italic.
<i>А а</i>	<i>А а</i>	<i>С с</i>	<i>С с</i>
<i>Б б</i>	<i>Б б</i>	<i>Т т</i>	<i>Т т</i>
<i>В в</i>	<i>В в</i>	<i>У у</i>	<i>У у</i>
<i>Г г</i>	<i>Г г</i>	<i>Ф ф</i>	<i>Ф ф</i>
<i>Д д</i>	<i>Д д</i>	<i>Х х</i>	<i>Х х</i>
<i>Е е</i>	<i>Е е</i>	<i>Ц ц</i>	<i>Ц ц</i>
<i>Ж ж</i>	<i>Ж ж</i>	<i>Ч ч</i>	<i>Ч ч</i>
<i>З з</i>	<i>З з</i>	<i>Ш ш</i>	<i>Ш ш</i>
<i>И и</i>	<i>И и</i>	<i>Щ щ</i>	<i>Щ щ</i>
<i>Й й</i>	<i>Й й</i>	<i>Ъ ъ</i>	<i>Ъ ъ</i>
<i>І і</i>	<i>І і</i>	<i>Ы ы</i>	<i>Ы ы</i>
<i>К к</i>	<i>К к</i>	<i>Ь ь</i>	<i>Ь ь</i>
<i>Л л</i>	<i>Л л</i>	<i>Ѧ Ѧ</i>	<i>Ѧ Ѧ</i>
<i>М м</i>	<i>М м</i>	<i>Э э</i>	<i>Э э</i>
<i>Н н</i>	<i>Н н</i>	<i>Ю ю</i>	<i>Ю ю</i>
<i>О о</i>	<i>О о</i>	<i>Я я</i>	<i>Я я</i>
<i>П п</i>	<i>П п</i>	<i>Ѧ Ѧ</i>	<i>Ѧ Ѧ</i>
<i>Р р</i>	<i>Р р</i>	<i>Ѧ Ѧ</i>	<i>Ѧ Ѧ</i>



## SPECIMEN OF HANDWRITING.

Въ минуту жизни трудную  
Тльснитса-ль въ сердцѣ грусть  
Одну молитву чудную  
Твержу я наизустъ

Есть сила благодатная  
Въ созвучьи словъ живыхъ  
И дышетъ непонятная  
Святая прелесть въ нихъ  
Съ души какъ бремя скатится  
Сомнѣнье далеко  
И вѣрится и плачется  
И такъ легко, легко

## ITALIC.

Въ минуту жизни трудную  
Тльснитса-ль въ сердцѣ грусть  
Одну молитву чудную  
Твержу я наизустъ  
Есть сила благодатная  
Въ созвучьи словъ живыхъ  
И дышетъ непонятная  
Святая прелесть въ нихъ  
Съ души какъ бремя скатится  
Сомнѣнье далеко  
И вѣрится и плачется  
И такъ легко, легко. (Лермонтовъ.)



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



## § 2. THE VOWELS.

(1) Russian has no less than fifteen symbols for vowels. They are partly survivals of an older stage of the language.

They are divided into "hard" and "soft," i.e. simple, or preceded by the consonant *y*. This distinction affects the grammar and pronunciation of every word, and the following table must be committed to memory:—

*Hard*: а      э      ы      о      у      ъ

*Soft*: я      е, ѣ      и, і, ѵ      ё      ю      ъ

(2) а *accented*\* is sounded like *a* in "father," but somewhat shorter.

Pronunciation  
of а and я.

e.g. ба́ба woman

а *unaccented* is sounded like *a* in "villa." e.g. ба́ба.

The familiar phonetic symbol for this sound is *a*, the *atonic* vowel. Thus ба́ба is sounded "bábə."

Unaccented а is sounded like the Russian *e* after ж, ч, ш, щ. [v. § 5 (4).]

я *accented* is sounded *ya*. e.g. я I.

я *unaccented* is sounded *yě* or *yi* or *i*.

e.g. Ба́ба-яга́ (Bábə-yigá), the name of the Russian witch; лю́бятъ (lyúbit) they love.

In one instance я is sounded *a* in the reflexive suffix ся (sa). [v. § 41, V. (1).]

я (ya) also represents the Old Slav *nasal vowel* *ę* (sounded like French *in* in "brin"). This historical fact explains such verbal forms as жать, жму, жну, root *žm̃*, *žň*, and nouns in -мя, e.g. пламя, пламени flame. [v. § 21 and § 49, II.] Polish conserves the Old Slav nasals *o* and *ę*, e.g. sędzić, Russian сѹдить (súd'it') to judge.

\* "Accented" means emphasised, stressed. There are no written accents in Russian, except in elementary grammars and texts.

(3) э is used in foreign words adapted to Russian, but in no pure Russian words except  
 Pronunciation of э, е, ѣ. э́торь (étot) this. It is sounded like the French è in “trève,” or the English *ai* in “hair,” but shorter. It is only used in transliteration of foreign *e*-sounds.

e.g. Э́мденъ Emden, по́эть (po-ét) poet, Э́ль Aisne

е and ѣ *now* represent the same sound, namely *yě*. In older Russian ѣ had a separate value, varying between *yě* and *ya*.\*

e.g. Екате́рина (Yekaterinə) Catherine  
 ѣ́мь (yem) I eat

е is used:—

(i) When it represents *ë* [v. § 2 (5) and § 9].

(ii) When it is inserted to avoid heavy consonants and represents *ь* [v. § 2 (7) and § 32]; e.g. *весь, вся* (veś, fsya) all.

*When unaccented* it becomes a faint *yě* or *i* sound.

e.g. по́ле (pólyě) field      сине́е (sínyěyě) blue

The pronouns *одни́* and *однѣ́*, *они́* masc., *они́* fem. and neuter, are both sounded *одни́*, *они́* (adní, aní).

(4) The sound-value of *ы* is best understood as a rapid combination of German *ü* with *i*,  
 Pronunciation of ы and и. *üi*; or, it may be got by placing the tongue in the *u* position, the lips in the *i* position. *Roughly*, it may be produced by sounding the English word *bin* deep in the throat.

*No word can ever begin with the vowel ы.*

\* The sound “*yě*” (е and ѣ) is open [yè] or close [yé] according as the following consonant is “hard” or “soft.”

и is the pure *i*-sound, produced with elongation of the lips, as in French or German.

і (и съ точкою = with a dot) is the same, but only used *before* other vowels (e.g. мнѣніе [mněnie] opinion), except in one word, міръ the world.

When и is used in diphthongs or reduced to the consonantal value of *y* in “yet,” it is written ѣ and called и краткое (и short).

e.g. стаѣ (stāi) flock

ѵ (ѵжица) is equivalent to и, and only used to represent the Greek *υ* in a few Church words.

*Note.*—міръ world, миръ peace, миро myrrh, сѵнодъ synod, and Владѣміръ Vladimir (and similar names, e.g. Казѣміръ).

(5) *o accented* is sounded like the German short *o* in “Gott,” and can be imitated by *shortening* the English vowel-sound *au* (e.g. cough).

e.g. роуъ horn

*o unaccented* is sounded *a* or *ə*.

e.g. хорошó	(kharəšó)	fine
порá	(pará)	time
слóво	(slóvə)	word.

ë is sounded *yó*, i.e. *o* with a *yod*-sound. It *only occurs* in accented syllables, and *in writing is not distinguished* from *e*, except in elementary books. Rules are given in § 9 for the change from *e* to *ë*.

e.g. ружьë	(ružó)	gun
несëте	(nisyóte)	ye carry
жëны	(žóny)	the wives
ëлушка	(yóluškə)	fir-tree

(6) *y* is sounded like *u* in “rule” or “pull”; *ю* is sounded like *u* in “universe,” but shorter.

e.g. юбилéй (yubiléy) jubilee  
несú (nisú) I carry

(7) *ъ* and *ь* are mute in modern Russian. The former indicates the hardness of a consonant; the latter the softness, i.e. the absence or presence of a *yod* element.

e.g. былъ (byl) he was      вязъ (vyas) elm  
быль (byl') a tale      вязь (vyaś) bond

But in older Russian *ъ* had a value something like the *u* in “nut,” and *ь* a soft short *i*-sound.

Hence the differences in conjugation and declension between родъ, рóда (родъ generation), and ротъ, ртá (ротъ mouth), терéть to rub, тры I rub.

This is because in all open syllables (i.e. ending in a vowel) *ъ* and *ь* became mute; in all closed syllables (i.e. ending in a consonant) *ъ* and *ь* disappeared when unaccented, or became *o* and *e* when accented. E.g. дьнó, дьнъ' (the bottom), now дно, довъ; рьтъ', рьтá (the mouth), now ротъ, рта; дьнъ', дьня́ (day), now день, дня́ [d'nyá].

Obviously then *ъ* and *ь* can only occur *medially* (in compounds) and *finally*.

*Further*, theoretically no Russian word ends in a consonant; the mute vowel is always added, even in foreign words.

e.g. Лóндонъ London      Брýссель Brussels

Latterly, there is a tendency to discard final *ъ*, when it is merely orthographical.

### § 3. THE CONSONANTS—VOICED AND UNVOICED.

The consonants must first be divided into *unvoiced* and *voiced* (e.g. in English *t* and *d*, *p* and *b*).

We then have:—

	<i>Labials.</i>	<i>Dentals.</i>	<i>Gutturals.</i>
Mutes unvoiced :	п	т	к
„ voiced :	б	д	г
Nasals :	м	н	
Spirants unvoiced :	ф о	—	
„ voiced :	в		

The remainder must be separately classed:—

	<i>Sibilants.</i>	<i>Compound consonants.</i>
Unvoiced :	с ш	ч ц, щ
Voiced :	з ж	дж —

Liquids : л and р.

### § 4. GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONSONANTS.

(1) There is no nasal guttural in Russian, like the English *ng*.

e.g. жѣнка (*žón-ka*) little woman (нк as in *pancake*)

(2) When б, д, г, в, з, and ж are *final* consonants, they are sounded like п, т, к, ф, с, and ш.

e.g. рабъ	(rap)	slave
дѣдъ	(d'ět)	grandfather
рогъ	(rok)	horn
островъ	(óstrəf)	island
ложь	(loš)	lie
розъ	(ros)	of the roses

(3) When in compounds *т* precedes *д*, the first *т* is assimilated to *д*.

e.g. *отд́ать* (*ad-dát'*) to give up

(4) When in the same syllable *з* precedes *ж*, or *с* precedes *ш*, the combination is sounded like *жж*, and *шш*.

e.g. *пóзже* (*požži*) later  
*вы́сшій* (*vyšši*) highest

(5) *ф* is scarcely found in original Russian words; *Ѡ* is almost disused, and has the same phonetic value, just as *ph* in "phonetic" has the same sound as *f* in "fine."

(6) When *к* and *г* precede *т* in the same syllable, they are commonly sounded as *х* (*kh*).

e.g. *но́гтя* (*nókhtya*) of the nail  
*кто* (*khtõ*) who

(7) Other instances of assimilation (*these constitute rules*):—

<i>бúдто</i>	( <i>búttə</i> )	as if
<i>сдѣ́лать</i>	( <i>zdělət'</i> )	to do
<i>отъ зарí</i>	( <i>adzarí</i> )	from the dawn
<i>прóсьба</i>	( <i>próz'bə</i> )	request
<i>сча́стье</i>	( <i>ščást'e</i> )	happiness
<i>извóзчикъ</i>	( <i>izvóščik</i> )	driver
<i>что</i>	( <i>štõ</i> )	what
<i>мýгкiй</i>	( <i>myákhki</i> )	soft
<i>лéгче</i>	( <i>lékhče</i> )	easier

*Generally speaking the subsequent letter, voiced or unvoiced, attracts and assimilates the preceding.*



(8) ч before н is sounded ш.

e.g. скýчно (skúšnə) weary

(9) All consonants are sounded, *except* д and т in -здн-, -стн-; л in солнце (sóntsi) sun; ль final after labials.

e.g. пóзний	(pózni)	late
влáстный	(vlásny)	powerful
рубль	(rup')	rouble
мысль	(mýs')	thought

## § 5. THE "HARD" AND "SOFT" CONSONANTS.

### *Preliminary.*

The vowels have already been divided into two sets *hard* and *soft*, i.e. plain and ioticised, viz. :—

<i>Hard</i> :	á	э	ы	о	у	ъ
<i>Soft</i> :	я	е ъ	и і	ё	ю	ь

Some consonants can be combined with any of the vowels. *These consonants are either hard or soft according as the vowel following is hard or soft.*

*Other* consonants are naturally "hard" or "soft," and can *only* be used with certain vowels.

*The strictest attention must be paid to these rules; as they explain the inflections, and dispose of most of the apparent exceptions.*

### (1) *The Labials.*

The labials п, б, м, в can *all* be either "hard" or "soft," and can be used with *any* of the vowels.

But note that л is inserted after п, б, м, and в in



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

Under identical conditions д changes to ж.

e.g.	стыдѣ́ться	(stydítsa)	to be ashamed
	стыдѣ́тся	(stydýátsa)	they are ashamed
<i>but</i>	стыжѹ́сь	(styžús')	I am ashamed

Russian, however, has some Church Slavonic derivatives, in which under these same conditions т became ш, and д, жд.

e.g.	предѣ́	(přet)	before (preposition)
	прѣ́жде	(přéždi)	before (adverb)
	слáд-кѣ́й	(slátki)	sweet, слáще (slášče) sweeter
	родѣ́ть	(rad'ít')	to bear, рождáть (raždát')

### (3). *The Gutturals.*

The gutturals к, г, х are in Russian words *never* combined with я, э, ы, ѳ, ю, ъ.

In Old Russian, before these vowels, they were regularly changed in *all* nominal and verbal inflections and in all derivatives to ц and ч, ж and ш or с respectively. In modern Russian these changes only take place in verbs and derivatives.

The series of hard and soft gutturals is as follows:—

*Hard* : ка ко кѹ кѣ

*Soft* : ке ки

*Soft Derivatives* : ча че чи чо or чѳ чу  
 or ци цѳ цѹ

Similarly with г and х; but г changes to ж, and х to ш.

Thus : га ге ги го гу гѣ

Derivatives жа же жи жо or жѳ жу жѣ

ха хе хи хо хѹ хѣ

Derivatives ша ше ши шо or шѳ шу шѣ or шѣ

Thus in Russian the “hard” noun волк (volk) wolf, has a plural волки, but an adjective волчий.

Thus, too:—

Прага (Prágə) Prague, has an adjective Пражский  
 Богъ (Bokh) God, Божество (Božestvo) deity  
 скакать (skakát') to leap, скачú (skačú) I leap (= кю)  
 верхъ (vérkh) above, вершина (viršínə) the height

к is always like the English *k* except in cases noted in § 4 (6).

г is always like the English *g* in “got” or “give”: *except* (1) it is used to represent the foreign sound *h*, e.g. Голландия (Gollándiya) Holland; also in the Russian word Господь (Haspód') Lord. (2) It is sounded like a voiced *x* before dentals, e.g. тогда (takhdá) then; also in Богъ God, and names of towns ending in буръ. (3) It is sounded в in the adjective gen. sing. termination -ого, -ого.

e.g. самогó	(səməvó)	of himself
дурногó	(durnónə)	of the bad man
дóбраго	(dóbrəvə)	of the good man

*x* is always sounded as in German *ach* or *ich*.

e.g. хата	(khata)	hut
хíлый	(khíly)	feeble
сáхаръ	(sákhər)	sugar.

#### (4) *The Sibilants and Compound Consonants.*

с, з, ш, ж, ч are *always* sounded like the consonants in the English words sword, zeal, short, leisure, church; subject to the general remarks in § 4 (2, 7, and 8).

c and з can be hard or soft and take any vowel. When "soft" they are sounded high on the palate, as though a sharp *i*-sound followed. They are here denoted as *ś* and *ź*.

щ is a combination of *š* and *č*, which has to be practised.

ж, ш, and ц are always hard.

ч and щ always soft.

They can only be used with the following vowels:—

<i>Hard</i> :	жа	же	жи	жо or жё	жу	жь or жъ
	ша	ше	ши	шө or шо	шу	шь or шъ
	ца	це	цы and ци	цо	цу	цъ

ю, я, ы are never used after ж, ч or щ.

c and з in soft derivatives change to ш and ж, e.g. здѣсь (zd'ěś) hear, близь (bliz) near, здѣшній, ближній.

<i>Soft</i> :	ча	че	чи	чо or чө	чу	чь
	ща	ще	щи	щө or щө	щу	щь

However, though in modern Russian the three sibilants ш, ж, ч are accounted hard, in older Russian ш and ж were soft; and the same rules of pronunciation in unaccented syllables apply to ша, жа, ча and ща as to я, viz. the vowel-value changes from a to i, and not a to ə.

e.g.	часóвня	(česóvnyá)	clock-tower
	жарá	(zəpá or žirá)	heat
	шагí	(šegi)	steps

ц is always hard; it can, *unlike* any of the other sibilants, be followed by ы; and, *like* them, unaccented цо always becomes, and is written, це.

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	
e.g.	отѣцъ	отцѡмъ	the father
	(at'éts)	(atsóm)	
	нѣмецъ	нѣмцемъ	the German
	(ně'mits)	(ně'mtsim)	

i.e. цо should have been spelt цѣ.

*Accented*: шо же́ or жо чѣ́ or чо цо щѣ́ or цо

*Unaccented*: ше же че це ще

### (5) *The Liquids.*

л and р can be accompanied by any vowel.

The pronunciation of both ѡ and ѡ is quite different from that of the English *l*.

ѡ\* is a guttural-sounded *l* produced by raising the back of the tongue and contracting the air-passage: the front part of the tongue is drawn back and rounded, whilst the lips are rounded. It may be imitated by pronouncing the English word *pull* deep in the throat.

ѡ is a palatal almost like the French *l* in "vil."

р is trilled, more like the Scotch *r*, р is palatal with a faint *yod*-sound. These sounds can only be acquired by ear.

With regard to the liquids л and р two special rules of formation should be noted:—

In roots of the type градъ, гóродъ (grat, górat) town, the Church Slavonic had the monosyllabic form,

---

\* In Polish written *l*.

Russian the disyllabic; and as the Church language has greatly influenced Russian, the modern language has examples of both.

e.g. злáто, зóлото (zlátə, zólatə) gold; странá (strəná) land; сторонá (stərəná) side; храни́ть (khrańít') to preserve; хорони́ть (khərəńít') to bury; гóродь (górat) city; but Петроградъ (Pitragrát) Petrograd; бéрегъ (b'érek) coast; but прибрéжье (príbréžji) the foreshore; мóлодь (mólod) young; млáдше (mládši) younger.

### § 6. CONGLOMERATED CONSONANTS WHEN FINAL.

Russian dislikes a word ending in a conglomeration of consonants. Thus Egypt is Егíпетъ (Yegípit), where етъ would in Old Russian have been written ѣтъ. [v. § 2 (6).]

Similarly, in neuter and feminine nouns, where the genitive plural is the root, e.g. дѣ́ло, дѣ́ль (d'ě'la, d'ěl'), -еть, deed, a vowel o, e or ë is sometimes inserted, especially when the last consonant is л or р.

e.g. сестрá, сестрѣ or сестёрѣ (sistrá, syóstr or sistyór) sister; игрá (igrá) game, adjective игóрный (igórny); свáдьба (svád'bə) wedding, свáдебѣ (svádip); тётка (tyótka) aunt, тёткѣ (tyótək); басня (básnya) fable, басенѣ (básin); пáлка (páłkə) stick, пáлокѣ (páłək).

### § 7. TRANSLITERATION INTO RUSSIAN.

The Russians, possessing their own special alphabet, have to transliterate foreign names and words. Within the limitations of their script they strive to be phonetic.

For *h* they use г.

e.g. Гáмбургъ Hamburg.

For the English *th* they substitute *т*.

e.g. Smith Смитъ.

For German *eu, äu* they use *ей*.

e.g. Лейхтенбергъ Leuchtenberg.

For the French *u*, German *ü*, they use *ю*.

e.g. Брюссель Brüssel (Brussels).

For the French *eu*, German *ö*, they use and write *ё*.

e.g. Гёте Goethe.

For the rest they try to represent sounds accurately.

e.g. джентльменъ gentleman, Брайтонъ Brighton, комильфо comme il faut, Поанкарé Poincaré, Тулонъ Toulon, Жанъ Jean, Динанъ Dinant, Лувенъ Louvain, Бржежанъ Brzeżań.

All these foreign words, *if* they end in consonants or vowels that accord with Russian declensions, namely *ь, ъ, й, а, я, о* (neuter), *е* (neuter), are declined in the same way regularly.

e.g. Бэкономъ by Васон, въ Лувенѣ in Louvain, въ Динанѣ at Dinant (or Dinan). [v. § 23 (3).]

### § 8. RUSSIAN DIPHTHONGS.

Russian diphthongs are nearly all formed with *й*; and are *ай, яй*, sounded like *i* in "white," only broader; *ей* and *ѣй* like *ey* in "grey," but longer; *ой, ёй* almost as English "boy"; and *уй, юй* like *ui* in "bruted."

The digraph *ау* denotes a true diphthong only in foreign words.

e.g. Брауншвейгъ Браунъ Braunschweig (Brunswick) Brown.

In Russian words (when found) the *а* and the *у* are separate vowels.

e.g. есаулъ a Cossack captain. Cf. in French "caoutchouc."



## § 9. THE CHANGE OF e TO ë.

The reader will have observed there is no symbol for *yo*, and the diæresis over e is only used in elementary school-books.

The following rules will guide him in the pronunciation of e as *ye*, or *yo*.

The rule is that accented e preceding a hard consonant or *oxytone* is pronounced ë.

e.g. село (síló) village, plural сѣла, сѣль (sóľə, šol); пла́четь (pláčit) he weeps, but растётъ (rastyót) he grows; ружье (ružó) gun; смерть (smert') death; ё́лшка (yóluskə), ё́лка (yoľkə) fir-tree; мертвѣй (myórtvy) dead; ко́нѣмъ (kənyóm) by the horse; нáше (náši) our (neut. nom. sing.); твое (tvayó) thy (neut. nom. sing.).

Exceptions:—

e accented before a hard syllable is *not* pronounced ë—

(1) In words ending in -ѣцъ, e.g. купѣцъ (kupéts) merchant. This is because ц was originally soft. [v. § 5 (4).]

(2) Before the adjectival terminations -скій and -нiй, which are unaccented and were originally preceded by ь, softening the consonant.

e.g. женá (žiná) wife, plur. жены (žóny), adj. жѣнскiй (žénski).

(3) In foreign words.

e.g. апте́ка	(apt'ékə)	apothecary's shop
билѣтъ	(bilét)	ticket
депѣша	(d'epéšə)	despatch



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



(2) In the instrumental singular of soft feminine nouns in я, like the hard nouns.

e.g. грозóю (грозá threat)

землѣю (землѣ́ earth)

*But* моéю, твоéю, своéю, with e *not* ë.

Also before the adjectival termination -кій. As explained in § 33 (8), this -кій is a grammarian's misrendering of the former form -кой, and, this к being only visually soft, there is no real exception to the rule. So, too, щекá cheek, щѣки cheeks (because after gutturals ы is never used; v. § 5 (3)).

(3) In the following words ѣ becomes ѣ̇, like e, ë:—

звѣздá	star	звѣзды (plural)
гнѣздó	nest	гнѣзда (plural)
приобрѣстí	to obtain	приобрѣлъ* (past tense)
цвѣстí	to bloom	цвѣлъ (past tense)
сѣдлó	saddle	сѣдла (plural)
надѣвáть	to dress	надѣванъ (past part. pass.)
		позѣвывать to yawn
		запечатлѣнъ impressed
		смѣтка sally

*These words are merely misspelt.*

In two words я is sounded ë:—

трясъ he shook, sounded трѣсъ

запрягъ he yoked (his horse), sounded запрѣгъ

Lastly, ея, the genitive of она́ she, is sometimes pronounced еѣ like the accusative (which is ee, sounded уіуó).

---

\* And other compounds of this verb.

## ACCIDENCE.

## § 10. THE PARTS OF SPEECH (ча́сти рѣчи).

The parts of speech in Russian are :—

<i>Declined</i>	{	(1) Nouns, <i>и́мя существи́тельное</i>
		(2) Adjectives, <i>и́мя прилагáтельное</i>
		(3) Pronouns, <i>мѣстоимѣнiе</i>
<i>Conjugated</i>		(4) Verbs, <i>глаго́ль</i>
<i>Declined</i>		(5) Numerals, <i>и́мя числи́тельное</i>
<i>Uninflected</i>	{	(6) Adverbs, <i>нарѣ́чiе</i>
		(7) Prepositions, <i>предло́гъ</i>
		(8) Conjunctions, <i>сою́зъ</i>
		(9) Interjections, <i>междомѣтiе</i>

There is *no article*.

Occasionally *оди́нъ* (one) is used as an *indefinite article*.

There is *no special* form for adverbs formed from *adjectives*. The neuter singular is used, except in adjectives in *-скiй*, where the form is *-ски*.

The verbs only have one regularly formed tense, namely the present ; and no other personal forms for past tenses, passives, moods, etc. These meanings are supplied by other simple modifications.

## THE NOUN (имя существительное).

## § 11. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

The Russian noun has three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter (рѳды мѳжескій, жѳнскій, средній). But Russian presents no great difficulties in the ascertainment of gender, for—

(a) Nouns *proper or common* denoting males only, whatever the termination, are masculine (“natural” gender).

e.g. Ивѳнъ John, Пѳтя Peter, Ивѳнько John, воеводѳ general, сиротѳ orphan (masc. or fem.).

(β) Nouns denoting females always have a feminine termination (“natural” and “grammatical” gender coincide).

(γ) The inflections of the masculine and neuter are identical, save in the nominative, vocative, and accusative singular and plural; just as in Latin *bellum* only differs from *equus* in these cases.

(δ) Generally speaking, the termination fixes the gender, unlike French or German, where the beginner has no guide, and can only learn by rote.

(i) Thus, nouns ending in ѳ, ѳ and й are masculine, *despite foreign etymology*.

e.g.	столъ	table	шрифѳъ	writing.
	Царь	Tsar	университѳтъ	university
	бѳзисъ	basis	конь	horse
	крѳзисъ	crisis	слонъ	elephant
		соловѳй	nightingale	

(ii) Nouns ending in о, е, ѳ are neuter.

e.g.	пѳле	field	солнце	sun
	дѳло	fact	бѳльѳ	washing

(iii) Words ending in а, я, ь are feminine, *despite foreign etymology*.

e.g. рука́ hand      пу́ля bullet  
 дра́ма drama (τὸ δράμα, le drame, das Drama,  
 etc.)

With this apparent exception, *as in Latin and Greek*, that words in а and я of masculine signification are masculine, but declined like feminines. Unlike German or French, the gender primarily follows the meaning, not the termination.

e.g. мужчи́на man      слуга́ man-servant  
 дядя́ uncle      Пётя́ Peter (short for Пётръ)  
 юно́ша youth      уби́йца murderer (masc. or fem.)

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Terminations :</i>	ъ	а	о
	ь	я	е
	ï	ь	мя

## § 12. THE DECLENSIONS.

There are three declensions.

(1) Original *o*-stems: *masculines in ь, ь and ï*,  
*neuters in о, ё, е.*

(2) Original *a*-stems: *feminines in а and я.*

(3) Original *i*-stems:

(*α*) One masculine word, путь path.

(*β*) Many feminines, principally abstracts in  
 -ость, e.g. ско́рость speed.

(*γ*) Two relics of older declensions:

ма́ть, ма́тери, cf. *mater, matris*, mother  
 дочь, до́чери daughter

(δ) Neuters in **мя, мени**.

e.g. **имя, имени** name, cf. Latin *nōmen, nōminis*; **сѣмя, сѣмени** seed, cf. Latin *sēmen, sēminis* [v. § 2 (2)]

In Old Slavonic there was, as in Latin, an *u* declension (e.g. *manus, manūs*). This has disappeared, but has left traces in the irregular genitives and locatives in *y* of the first (Russian) declension: also in the masculine genitive plural termination **-овъ**.

### § 13. THE CASES.

There are seven cases.

- (1) Nominative, **Именительный падежь**
- (2) Vocative, **Звательный** „
- (3) Accusative, **Винительный**
- (4) Genitive, **Родительный**
- (5) Dative, **Дательный** „
- (6) Instrumental, **Творительный** „
- (7) Locative or *Prepositional*, **Предложный падежь**

This list looks formidable, but, as with Apollyon's lion in "The Pilgrim's Progress," apprehensions vanish on a close approach.

The vocative only subsists in a few Church words, e.g. **Бо́же** from **Богъ** God, **Христѣ** from **Христось** Christ, **Господи** from **Господь** Lord, **Исусе** from **Исусь** Jesus, **отче** from **отець** father. [v. § 69, II.]

The objective is identical with the nominative in all nouns denoting inanimate, but with the genitive in all nouns denoting animate objects. This rule has one exception—for the one instance where the accusative has an independent form, namely, the accusative singular of nouns in **a** and **я**.

e.g. **Я видѣлъ Царя** (genitive) **и Царицу**.

I saw the Tsar and the Tsaritsa.

**Учитель прочёлъ ваше сочинѣніе**.

The teacher read your work.

The original Slav accusative has vanished (except in the singular of nouns in а and я), and has been replaced by the nominative or genitive forms.

In all negative sentences the object is in the genitive, whatever the noun, and without exception.

e.g. Я не окóнчилъ своéй рабóты.

I have not finished my work; the genitive being *partitive* in meaning "nothing of my work."

Я пи́когда́ не слы́халь та́кихъ скáзокъ.

I never heard such stories.

The instrumental case marks the agent by whom, and the locative or prepositional is used to denote the place in which; in modern Russian *it cannot be used by itself*, but only with certain prepositions, hence it is often called the "prepositional."

e.g. Въ селѣ́ (v sílě) in the village.

Я говорѣ́лъ о Я́нколáѣ (ya gəvə́riĭ anikə́láye).

I was talking of Nicholas.

Thus, virtually, there are only five separate forms for the cases—nominative, genitive, dative, instrumental, and locative.

#### § 14. THE NUMBERS.

There are two numbers, singular and plural (едѣ́нственное числó, мнóжественное числó). The forms are almost identical for masculine nouns in ъ, ь, ѣ, and feminines in а, я; neuters in о, е, ё only differ in forming the nominative and accusative plural in а, я, as in Latin.

In ancient Russian there was a dual, but this is obsolete. Some few forms of it survive as irregularities. [v. § 24 (3).]

The plural of nouns in и, of the third declension, is slightly different.



## § 15. HARD AND SOFT NOUNS.

All nouns of the first and second declensions are “hard” or “soft” throughout: i.e. there is a double scheme of declension in “hard” or “soft” vowels, according as the root is hard or soft.

Those who have learnt the rules in § 3 and § 5 will find no difficulty in grasping this fundamental difference, which underlies all Russian inflections.

Nouns of the *н* declension, the third, are naturally all “soft.”

## SCHEME OF DECLENSIONS.

	First Declension.				Second Declension.		Third Declension.	
	Masculine. Hard.    Soft.		Neuter. Hard.    Soft.		Feminine. Hard.    Soft.		Fem.	Neut.
<i>Sing.</i>								
Nom.	ъ	ь иі	о	е ё	а	я	ь	мя
Acc.	Like N. or G.		о	е ё	у	ю	ь	мя
Gen.	а [у]	я [ю]	а	я	ы	и	и	мени
Dat.	у	ю	у	ю	ѣ	ѣ	и	мени
Instr.	омъ	емъ	омъ	емъ	ою,	ею	ію	менемъ
Loc.	ѣ [у]	ѣ [ю]	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	и	мени
<i>Plur.</i>								
Nom.	ы	и	а	я	ы	и	и	мена
Acc.	Like N. or G.		а	я	Like N. or G.		и	мена
Gen.	овъ ей	евъ ей	ъ	ей	ъ	ь ей	ей	менъ
Dat.	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	ямъ	менамъ
Instr.	ами	ями	ами	ями	ами	ями	ьми	менами
Loc.	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	яхъ	менахъ

It will be observed that in the plurals there is scarcely any divergence.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

These six examples illustrate regular forms in “hard” consonants. *Please observe the variations necessary, after gutturals and palatals, and re-read § 5 (3) and (4). The rules in § 5 apply to all declensions and conjugations.* Thus *клячѣмъ* is sounded *klučám*, *мѣрши мѣршѣ*, etc.

*Examples of Weak Stems.*

*Singular.*

	hero	horse	battle	knife (ж originally soft)
N. V.	герóй	конь	бой	ножъ
Acc.	герóя	коня́	бóй	ножъ
Gen.	герóя	коня́	бóя	ножа́
Dat.	герóю	коню́	бóю	ножѹ́
Instr.	герóемъ	копѣмъ <sup>с</sup>	бóемъ	ножóмъ
Loc.	герóѣ	конѣ́	бóѣ	ножѣ́

*Plural.*

N. V.	герóи	кóни	бои́	ножи́
Acc.	герóевъ	коней́	бóи	ножи́
Gen.	герóевъ	коней́	боёвъ	ножéй
Dat.	герóямъ	ковя́мъ	боймъ	ножѣмъ
Instr.	герóями	ковя́ми	бойми	ножѣми
Loc.	герóяхъ	ковя́хъ	бо́ихъ	ножѣхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart; they are explained, and rules stated, in § 5 (3) and (4).

§ 17. EXAMPLES OF NEUTER NOUNS OF FIRST DECLENSION.

*Hard Stems.*

*Singular.*

	yoke	village	quality
N. V. A.	ѣго	селó	кѣчество
Gen.	ѣга	селѣ	кѣчества
Dat.	ѣгу	селѹ́	кѣчеству
Instr.	ѣгомъ	селóмъ	кѣчествомъ
Loc.	ѣгѣ	селѣ́	кѣчествѣ́

		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	и́га	се́ла	ка́чества
Gen.	игъ	се́ль	ка́чествъ
Dat.	и́гамъ	се́ламъ	ка́чествамъ
Instr.	и́гами	се́лами	ка́чествами
Loc.	и́гахъ	се́лахъ	ка́чествахъ

*Soft and Sibilant Stems.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	sea	school
N. V. A.	мо́ре	учи́лище
Gen.	мо́ря	учи́лища
Dat.	мо́рю	учи́лищу
Instr.	мо́ремъ	учи́лищемъ
Loc.	мо́рѣ	учи́лищѣ
	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	моря́	учи́лища
Gen.	морей́	учи́лищъ
Dat.	моря́мъ	учи́лищамъ
Instr.	моря́ми	учи́лищами
Loc.	моря́хъ	учи́лищахъ
	<i>Singular.</i>	
	gun	knowledge
N. V. A.	ружьё́	зна́нiе
Gen.	ружья́	зна́нiя
Dat.	ружью́	зна́нiю
Instr.	ружьёмъ	зна́нiемъ
Loc.	ружьѣ́	зна́нiи
	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	ру́жья	зна́нiя
Gen.	ру́жей	зна́нiй
Dat.	ру́жьямъ	зна́нiямъ
Instr.	ру́жьями	зна́нiями
Loc.	ру́жьяхъ	зна́нiяхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart; a discussion of them will be found in § 27.

§ 18. EXAMPLES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION (второе склонение) IN а AND я.

The scheme for these nouns is —

	<i>Singular:</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V.	а	я	ы	и
Acc.	у	ю	Like N. or G. [v. § 13]	
Gen.	ы	и	ъ	ь
Dat.	ѣ	ѣ	амъ	ямъ
Instr.	ою	оѣ* ею ей*	ами	ями
Loc.	ѣ	ѣ	ахъ	яхъ

Examples :—

	<i>Singular.</i>			
	Hard.	Hard.	Soft.	Sibilant.
N. V.	widow	hand	bullet	soul
Acc.	вдова́	рука́	пу́ля	душа́
Gen.	вдовы́	руки́	пу́ли	души́
Instr.	вдово́ю	руко́ю	пу́лею	душо́ю
D. L.	вдовѣ́	рукѣ́	пу́лѣ	душѣ́
		<i>Plural.</i>		
N. V.	вдо́вы	ру́ки	пу́ли	ду́ши
Acc.	вдовѣ́	ру́ки	пу́ли	душѣ́
Gen.	вдовѣ́	рукѣ́	пу́ль	душѣ́
Instr.	вдова́ми	рука́ми	пу́лями	душа́ми
Dat.	вдова́мъ	рука́мъ	пу́лямъ	душа́мъ
Loc.	вдова́хъ	рука́хъ	пу́ляхъ	душа́хъ
	<i>Singular.</i>			
	Sibilant.	Hard.	Fricative.	Fricative.
N. V.	candle	tear	empress	food
Acc.	свѣ́ча	слеза́	цари́ца	пи́ща
Gen.	свѣ́чи	слезы́	цари́цы	пи́щи
Instr.	{ свѣ́чею } { свѣ́чою }	слезо́ю	цари́цею	пи́щею
D. L.	свѣ́чѣ́	слезѣ́	цари́цѣ́	пи́щѣ́

\* Contracted form.

<i>Plural.</i>			
N. V.	свѣ́чи	слѣ́зы	ца́рицы
Acc.	свѣ́чи	слѣ́зы	ца́риць
Gen.	свѣ́чъ	слѣ́зь	ца́рицъ
Instr.	свѣ́чами	слеза́ми	ца́рицами
Dat.	свѣ́чамъ	слеза́мъ	ца́рицамъ
Loc.	свѣ́чахъ	слеза́хъ	ца́рицахъ

*For pronunciation consult §§ 2 (2), 5 (3), 5 (4).*

*Soft and Vocalic Stems.*

<i>Singular.</i>			
	earth	lightning	family
N. V.	земля́	мо́лнія	семья́
Acc.	зе́млю	мо́лвию	семью́
Gen.	земли́	мо́лнии	семьи́
Instr.	земле́ю	мо́лвиею́	семье́ю
D. L.	землѣ́	мо́лнии	семьѣ́
<i>Plural.</i>			
N. V.	зе́мли	мо́лнии	се́мьи
Acc.	зе́мли	мо́лнии	семей́
Gen.	земель́	мо́лний	семей́
Instr.	земля́ми	мо́лніями	семья́ми
Dat.	земля́мъ	мо́лніямъ	семья́мъ
Loc.	земля́хъ	мо́лніяхъ	семья́хъ

Examples of Masc. in а, я.

<i>Singular.</i>		
	Hard.	Soft.
N. V.	ста́роста elder	дядя uncle
Acc.	ста́росту	дядю́
Gen.	ста́росты	дяди́
Instr.	ста́ростою	дядею́
D. L.	ста́ростѣ́	дядѣ́

	<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V.	ста́росты	дяди
Acc.	ста́рость	дядей
Gen.	ста́рость	дядей
Instr.	ста́ростами	дядями
Dat.	ста́ростамъ	дядямъ
Loc.	ста́ростахъ	дядяхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart. Consult § 2 (5), § 9, and § 11.

### § 19. THIRD DECLENSION (трѣтье склонѣние) : NOUNS IN *и* and *мя*.

These nouns are always soft ; most of the terminations are in *и*.\*

#### MASCULINE.

Only one example survives :—

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
N. V. A.	пу́ть path	N. V. A.	пути́
G. D. L.	пути́	Gen.	путѣй
Instr.	путѣмъ	Dat.	путѣмъ
		Instr.	путѣми
		Loc.	путѣхъ

Formerly there were others of this type ; e.g. *день* day, now a soft masc. of the first declension. But “after midday” is “по-полудни” (*рѣрѣлудни*) ; *дни* being the old genitive.

### § 20. THIRD DECLENSION IN *и* : FEMININES.

These are numerous and important. In form they are liable to confusion with soft masculines like *конь* horse.

---

\* Just like the Latin *turris* ; with which type they correspond philologically.

E.g.	<i>Singular.</i>		
	bone	horse	door
{ N. V.	кость	лошадь	дверь
{ Acc.	кость	лошадь	Declined like кость
{ Gen.	кости	лошади	
{ Dat.	кости	лошади	
{ Loc.	кости	лошадѣ	
{ Instr.	костью } костію }	лошадью } лошадію }	
	<i>Plural.</i>		
N. V.	кости	лошади	Declined like кость
Acc.	кости	лошадѣй	
Gen.	костѣй	лошадѣй	
Dat.	костѣмъ	лошадѣмъ	
Instr.	костѣми	лошадѣми	
Loc.	костѣхъ	лошадѣхъ	
	<i>Singular.</i>		
	fortress	care	
{ N. V.	крѣпость	осторожность	
{ Acc.	крѣпость	осторожность	
{ Gen.	крѣпости	осторожности	
{ Dat.	крѣпости	осторожности	
{ Loc.	крѣпости	осторожности	
{ Instr.	крѣпостью	осторожностью	
	<i>Plural.</i>		
N. V.	крѣпости		—
Acc.	крѣпости		—
Gen.	крѣпостѣй		—
Dat.	крѣпостѣмъ		—
Instr.	крѣпостѣми		—
Loc.	крѣпостѣхъ		—

Observe звѣрь wild beast, which is now masculine has звѣрьми instr. plural, besides звѣрями.



§ 21. THIRD DECLENSION IN И: NEUTERS IN МЯ.  
Consult § 2 (2).

Those who know Latin grammar have learnt the forms like *nōmen*, *nōminis*, *sēmen*, *sēminis*.

The Russian words of this type are very similar. E.g.

<i>Sing.</i>	name	flame	tribe	seed
Nom. Voc. Acc.	и́мя	пла́мя	пле́мя	сѣ́мя*
Gen. Dat. Loc.	и́мени			
Instr.	и́менемъ			
<i>Plur.</i>				
Nom. Voc. Acc.	имена́	Like и́мя	Like и́мя	Like и́мя, but gen. plural сѣ́мянъ
Gen.	имёнъ			
Dat.	имена́мъ			
Instr.	имена́ми			
Loc.	имена́хъ			

§ 22. THIRD DECLENSION: REMAINS OF OLDER FORMS.

(1) *Feminine*: There are only two.

*Singular.*

	mother	daughter
Nom. Voc.	ма́ть	до́чь
A. G. D. L.	ма́тери	до́чери
Instr.	ма́терью	до́черью

*Plural.*

Nom. Voc.	ма́тери	до́чери
Acc. Gen.	матере́й	дочере́й
Dat.	матеря́мъ	дочеря́мъ
Instr.	{ матеря́ми матерья́ми	{ дочеря́ми дочерья́ми
Loc.	матеря́хъ	дочеря́хъ

Cf. *māter*, *mātris*; μήτηρ, μητρός; θυγάτηρ, θυγατρός.

\* Cf. Latin *sēmen*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



Longfellow's poetry, во время президентства Карно́ in the Presidency of Carnot. On the other hand, names like Рена́нь Renan, Дина́нь Dinant, Аахенъ Aix-la-Chapelle, Шопе́нь Chopin, are declined like ordinary nouns. [v. § 7.] E.g. Рѣчь сэра Эдуарда Гре́я, the speech of Sir Edward Grey (Грей).

## § 24. REMARKS ON THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

(1) In old Slavonic, as in Latin, there used to be a declension in "u," e.g. *mānus, manūs*; e.g. in Russian сынъ son (Gothic *sunus*). This declension has completely vanished, but has left traces in the following irregularities:—

(a) Some nouns, denoting materials, have mostly *unaccented* genitive in -у, -ю.

e.g. ча́ю from чай tea

са́хару from са́харъ sugar

наро́ду from наро́дь people

e.g. ча́шка ча́ю a cup of tea, but э́тотъ родъ са́хара this sort of sugar.

e.g. мно́го наро́ду many people, ха́ра́ктеръ а́нглийскаго наро́да the character of the English people.

Also in the phrases:—

съ ве́рху from on high

съ ни́зу from beneath

безъ то́лку senseless

изъ ви́ду out of sight

and a few others.

(β) Some *monosyllables* have a locative in -у, -ю *accented*, used with **въ** in, **на** on.

e.g. **въ лѣсѹ** in the forest, but **при лѣсѣ** at the wood  
**въ годѹ** in the year  
**въ бою** in the fight  
**въ краю** on the edge  
**на льдѹ** on the ice  
**въ снѣгѹ** in the snow  
**въ раю** in *Paradise*  
**на берегѹ** on the shore [v. § 5 (5).]

(γ) **сынѣ** son, **кумѣ** godfather, and others, insert the syllable -ов- into the plural.

e.g. [**сынѹ** sons (poetical)] **синовѹ**  
**кумѣ** godfather **кумовѹ**  
**зятѣ** son-in-law **зятевѹ**  
**сватѣ** marriage-broker **сватовѹ**

(δ) It is in the nouns in “u” that the genitive plural -овѣ originated; it has spread to nearly all masculine stems.

(2) Some nouns form their plural in -ѹ; this is really an old feminine collective form.

e.g. **братѣ** brother, **братѹ** (gen. **братевѣ**, dat. **братѹмѣ**, instr. **братѹми**, loc. **братѹхѣ**)  
**камень** stone, **каменѹ** stones, **камни** single stones  
**бросатѣ** **каменѹми**, not **каменѹми**, to stone a man  
**стуль** a chair, **стѹльѹ**  
**сукѣ** a bough, **сѹчѹ** [v. § 5 (3).]  
**уголь** coal, **угольѹ**

зубъ tooth, зѹбья teeth (of a machine), зѹбы  
teeth (of a man)

листь leaf, ли́стья leaves of a tree, листы́ (leaves  
of paper)

другъ friend, друзья́ (gen. друзѣй)

князь prince, князья́ (gen. князѣй)

мужъ husband, мужья́ (gen. мужѣй)

зять son-in-law, зятья́ (gen. зятѣй), also зятевья́

деверь the husband's brother, деверья́ (gen.  
деверѣй)

(3) Some masculine nouns form their plural in -á.

e.g.	рука́вь	sleeve	рукава́
	бе́регъ	shore	берега́
	глазъ	eye	глаза́
	по́логъ	bed-canopy	полога́
	рогъ	horn	рога́
	ко́локоль	bell	колокола́

It will be observed most of these are essentially  
*duals* in meaning; *this á is the old dual, Nom. and Acc.*  
Cf. § 26 (5) (3).

This á ending has been extended to a few nouns—

e.g.	го́родъ	town	города́
	лѣсъ	wood	лѣса́
	го́лосъ	voice	голоса́
	домъ	house	дома́

as well as most loan-words in -ерьъ and -оръ—

e.g.	до́кторъ	doctor	доктора́
	профе́ссоръ	professor	профессора́
	кучеръ	coachman	кучера́
<i>but</i>	актёръ	actor (French <i>acteur</i> )	актёры
	имперáторъ	Emperor	имперáторы

Other instances are :—

о́бразъ	shapes	о́бразы	shapes	образа́	images
хлѣ́бъ	bread	хлѣ́бы	loaves	хлѣ́ба	corn
цвѣ́тъ	colour	цвѣ́ты	flowers	цвѣ́та	colours
мѣ́хъ	bellows	мѣ́хи			
мѣ́хъ	fur	мѣ́ха			
о́рденъ	the order	о́рдены	the orders (e.g. religious)	ордена́	the orders (decorations)

(4) The genitive plural of masculines in -ъ originally ended in -ъ, and was only accentually differentiated from the nominative. This genitive plural in -ъ still obtains in the neuters and feminines. [v. § 24 (1) (δ).]

Hence it is (v. paradigm § 15) that masculines ending in a weak consonant form the genitive plural in -ей; e.g. царь, царя́, царь'ъ, which became царь'й, and was pronounced and spelled царей in Russian, after ь and ъ had become mute.

So, too, words in -жь, -а, -шь (e.g. ножъ knife, ножа́, ноже́й), because [v. § 5 (4)] ж and ш, and ч and щ *were all originally soft*.

But й is regarded as a consonantal ending, and takes -евъ; e.g. строи́ construction, стро́евъ.

Some masculine nouns still have a genitive plural in -ъ,

		<i>Gen. plur.</i>
e.g.	во́лосъ	hair воло́съ
	разъ	time (so many times) разъ
	сапо́гъ	boot сапо́гъ
	драгу́нъ	dragoon драгу́нъ
	ту́рокъ	Turk ту́рокъ
	гренаде́ръ	grenadier гренаде́ръ
	глазь	eye глазь
	ре́крутъ	recruit ре́крутъ

as well as all those which form their nominative singular in -инъ, and are thus distinguished by diversifying the nominative.

Lastly, masculine nouns of measurement—

e.g. фунтъ a pound (= 0.90 lb. avoirdupois)

сажень a lineal measure (= 7 feet)

make their genitive plural thus: фунтъ, сажень.

(5) Nom. sing. in -инъ.

Many words, especially words descriptive of race, creed, etc., have a *singular* with the adjectival form -инъ [v. § 34 (2)], but drop the -инъ in the plural, forming the nom. plural in -е or -а. E.g.

	Roman	Christian	Englishman
Nom. sing.	Рѣмлянинъ	христіанинъ	Англичанинъ
Gen. sing.	Рѣмлянина	христіанина	Англичанина
Nom. plur.	Рѣмляне	христіане	Англичане
Gen. plur.	Рѣмлянъ	христіанъ	Англичанъ

	Tatar	master	wife's brother
Nom. sing.	татаринъ	баринъ	шуринъ
Gen. sing.	татарива	барина	шурина
Nom. plur.	{ татары } { татаре }	баре	шурья
Gen. plur.	татарь	барь	шурьевъ

хозяинъ (master of the house) is not quite regular. In the *singular*, хозяинъ, хозяйина, etc.

*Plural* Nom. Voc.           хозяева [cf. § 24 (1) (γ)]

„   Acc. Gen.               хозяевъ

„   Dat. Instr. Loc.       хозяев-, амъ, ами, ахъ

In this connection [v. § 34 (2)] the possessive adjectives in -инъ used as *proper names* are declined as stated in that section, and not like the above.

## (6) Irregular formations.

*Singular.*

	Christ	The Lord
Nom.	Христóсь	Госпóдь (Насрóд')
Voc.	Христé	Гóсподи
Gen.	Христá	Гóспода
Dat.	Христý	Гóсподу
Instr.	Христóмь	Гóсподомь
Loc.	Христѣ	Гóсподѣ

## neighbour

## devil

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. Voc.	сосѣдъ	сосѣди	чортъ*	чѣрти
Acc.	сосѣда	сосѣдей	чóрта	черте́й
Gen.	etc.		чóрта	Like царь, soft stem.
Dat.			чóрту	
Instr.			чóртомь	
Loc.			чóртѣ	Like царь, soft stem.

человѣкъ, man (in general: мужъ husband, мужчи́на male), generally forms its plural in люди́ (declined like a plural of an и stem).

When the plural is used, the genitive plural is человѣ́къ, e.g. двáдцать человѣ́къ twenty men.

### § 25. ACCENTUATION OF THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Most masculine nouns retain the accent of the nominative; but, as the original nominative termination ѣ has become mute, and cannot be accented, some nouns seem to throw the accent forward on to the other terminations.

\* Not to be confused with черта́ (fem.) feature.



E.g. *человѣкъ* man, *сарайъ* barn, *братъ* brother, retain the accent on the syllable accented in the nominative, i.e. on the stem; e.g. *человѣкомъ*, *сарайю*, *брата*.

No general rule can explain the variance of the accent; the following principles may be a guide.

I. The following derivatives were originally accented on the termination *ъ*, and therefore throw the accent forward on to the other terminations:—

- (1) All names in *-йпъ*, e.g. *Карамзинъ* Karamzin.
- (2) All words in *-ецъ*, e.g. *купецъ* merchant.
- (3) All derivatives in *-акъ*,\* *-йкъ*, *-якъ*, *-окъ*, *-ежъ*, *-ачъ*; e.g. *дуракъ* fool, *старикъ* old man, *падѣжъ* case, *палачъ* executioner, *кусокъ* morsel, *скрипачъ* fiddler, *тюфякъ* mattress.
- (4) All derivatives in *-унъ*, *-аръ* (except *государь* Lord, as a royal title, *государя*), *-ыръ*, *-иръ*, and the months in *-брь*; e.g. *девятаго октября* on the 9th October, *табунъ* herd of horses, *столяръ* carpenter, *пузырь* bellows; but *панцырь* (*панцыря*) cuirass.
- (5) A very large number of words, such as *столъ* table, *быкъ* ox, *женихъ* bridegroom, *плодъ* fruit, *полкъ* regiment, *языкъ* tongue, *пѣтухъ* cock. Nothing but reading and practice can determine which these are.

II. Secondly, many words retain the accent as in the nominative in the singular, but throw it forward in the plural; e.g. *садъ* garden, *чинъ* rank, *шагъ* step.

---

\* Cf. the Greek accent *акός*, *икός*,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

But, with this difference, neuters in -цѳ, -це, -щѳ, -ще, -шѳ, -ше, -чѳ, -че, form the genitive plural in ѳ.

e.g. плечѳ shoulder плечѳ [v. also § 26 (5) (β).]  
 жилище home жилищѳ  
 лицѳ face лицѳ

Nouns in -ѳ form the genitive plural in -ей, the reason being that the ѳ is inserted to divide the syllables, so that such words come under the general rule of neuters ending in ѳ.

e.g. ружѳ gun ружей  
 питьѳ drink питей

(2) Neuters in -іе, and feminines in -ія (these terminations being unaccented) spell the ѳ terminations as they are sounded, viz. и.

e.g. пониманіе the understanding  
 Лос. о пониманіи

These nouns in -іе are very common, being the regular verbal nouns formed from the infinitives to express the abstract idea of the verb.

e.g. выразить to express, выраженіе the expressing  
 имѳть to own, имѳніе the estate

The *genitive plural* in nouns in -іе and -ія is -ій.

e.g. Я не хочу егѳ имѳній  
 Ya ne khačú yivó iměni  
 I do not desire his property

In poetry and colloquial speech such nouns are contracted, e.g. желанье for желаніе.

Some such nouns form a genitive plural in *ьевъ*, e.g. *платье* clothing, *платьевъ*; *кушанье* food, *кушаньевъ*; but these are exceptions, for such nouns are in reality paroxytone collectives, the old collective termination being *-ѣ*, plural *-ья*.

These nouns are *only* found in the contracted form, and may be compared with the plurals *друзья*, *братья* [v. § 24 (2)].

(3) *Mixed masculine and neuter declension.*

*Augmentative* nouns in *-ище*, e.g. *село* village, *селище* a big village, form their plural like that of the soft masculine nouns, e.g. *конь*. Thus *селищи*, *селищей*, etc. But *кладбище*, cemetery, is regular; the augmentative sense has disappeared.

So, too, *diminutives* in *-ко*.

e.g. *словечко* a little word

*Pl. Nom. Voc. Acc.* словечки

*Gen.* словечекъ [v. § 6.]

Observe, too, *очко*, *очки* (little eyes), now spectacles; *очковъ*, and so on.

Some other miscellaneous examples are:—

солнце	sun	солнца	and -ы	солнцевъ
дно	bottom	дны		донъ
яблоко	apple	яблоки		яблокъ or яблоковъ

(4) *Plurals in -ья* [v. § 24 (2)].

Neuter words capable of a collective meaning have a collective plural like the masculine nouns.

e.g.	дерево	tree	деревья
	перо	feather	перья
	крыло	wing	крыла and крылья

*Observe.*—колѣно, knee, has three meanings and three plurals: (1) колѣна́ family or race; (2) колѣни, колѣне́й knees; (3) колѣ́нья, колѣ́ньевъ knots on wood.

(5) *Irregular forms.*

These may conveniently be considered under two heads: (a) obsolete declensions, of which a few relics subsist; (b) dual forms.

(a) *Obsolete forms.*

Не́бо heaven, чу́до miracle, сло́во word, тѣ́ло body, ко́ло wheel, formerly belonged to the same declension as the Latin *genus, generis*, Greek *νέφος, νέφους (νέφεσος)*. Hence the adjectival forms are: словéсный literary, небéсный heavenly, чудéсный wonderful, тѣлéсный corporeal, and колéсный pertaining to a wheel.

Of all these forms only two survive in regular use: чу́до, чудеса́, чудéсь [not чудёсь, cf. § 9, exception (4)]; and не́бо, небеса́, небéсь [not небёсь].

The modern Russian for wheel is колесó, plural колёса.

Сло́во and тѣ́ло are regular like дѣ́ло.

In words denoting the young of animals a plural -ята is still used, the singular being -ёнокъ.

e.g.	котёнокъ	kitten	котята, котятъ
	жеребёнокъ	colt	жеребята, жеребятъ
	волчёнокъ	wolf-cub	волчата, волчатъ

[v. § 5 (3).]

So, too, цыпята chickens, ребята children (in lofty language, used as the plural of ребёнокъ), etc., and also внукъ grandson, внучата great grand-children.

*(B) Dual forms.*

о́ко	eye (poetical only)	о́чи, очéй
у́хо	ear	у́ши, уше́й
колéно	knee	колéни, колéвей
сто	one hundred	двéсти two hundred
плечó	shoulder	плéчи, плечъ

### § 27. ACCENTUATION OF THE NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

*As in all cases the accent on the nominative must be ascertained from the dictionary or the teacher.*

*Dissyllabic words reverse the accent in the plural.*

e.g.	тéло	body	тéла
	мóре	sea	моря́
	селó	village	сéла [v. § 9.]
	ребрó	rib	рёбра
	дéрево	tree	дерéвья
	письмó	letter	пíсьма, пíсемъ
	пра́во	right	правá
	сéрдце	heart	сердцá
Except	блюдо	vessel	блюда
	гóрло	throat	гóрла

*Trisyllabic nouns, if oxytone, have the plural paroxytone; if the stem is accented, make the plural oxytone.*

e.g.	колесó	wheel	колёса
	полотнó	cloth	полóтна
	зёркало	mirror	зеркалá, зёркаль or зеркáль
	крúжево	lace	кружевá, крúжевъ
	óзеро	lake	озерá or озёра

Derivative nouns in -іе, -ство, retain the same accent.

e.g. существó	being	существо́ва
знáніе	knowledge	знáнія
праві́тельство	administration	праві́тельства

## § 28. REMARKS ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

(1) Genitive plural in -ь and -ей.

Practically the same conditions obtain as with the neuters. [v. § 26 (1).]

Soft nouns in -я and -ча, -ша and -жа, regularly form the genitive plural in -ь and -чь, and the instrumental singular in -ёю, -ею; -чою, -чею; -шою, -шею; -жою, -жею. [v. § 5 (4).] So, too, nouns in -ца preceded by a vowel: instrumental singular -цою, -цею; genitive plural -ць.

But nouns in -ча, -жа, -ша, when preceded by a consonant, form the genitive plural in -ей: and the same applies to nouns in -ща.

e.g. вѣ́кша	squirrel	вѣ́кшей
саранча́	grasshopper	саранчѣ́й
Similarly: дѣ́дя	uncle	дѣ́дей
ноздря́	nostril	ноздрѣ́й
до́ля	lot	до́ль and долѣ́й
за́ря	dawn*	за́рь and зарѣ́й

Nouns in -ья also have a genitive plural in -ей *regularly*, when accented; -ій unaccented.

e.g. лгу́нья	liar	лгу́ній
статья́	article	статѣ́й
госты́я	guest (fem.)	гості́й
свинья́	pig	свинѣ́й

\* Also the evening half-light.

(2) In ordinary speech and in poetry the instrumental singular -ою, -ею is contracted to -оѹ and -еѹ, and often thus written.

(3) Many nouns in the second declension are masculine, *because of their meaning*, as in Latin *agricola*.

e.g. дѣ́дя uncle, ю́ноша youth, Са́ша diminutive of Алекса́ндръ, Ко́ля diminutive of Никола́й, Пе́тя diminutive of Пе́тръ, слуга́ servant (feminine form служáнка), сирота́ orphan, masc. or fem. *according to meaning*, судья́ judge, бродя́га vagabond.

(4) There are very many derivative nouns in -ія, amongst them the loan-words from the Latin *tio*, e.g. на́ція nation.

The rule regarding these is the same as with the derivative neuters in -іе [v. § 26 (2)], namely that the ъ forms are written and sounded и.

e.g. а́рмія army, въ а́рміи in the army, а́рмій genitive plural; so, too, Арме́нія Armenia, А́нглия England, Фра́нція France, etc.

*Note.*—Ма́рія, о Ма́рии; but Ма́рья, о Ма́рьѣ, Mary.

## § 29. ACCENTUATION OF SECOND DECLENSION.

The rules for the accentuation of this declension are comparatively easy.

Only oxytone nouns, i.e. those accented on the final syllable, can shift the accent. All others retain the accent on the same syllable.

Of oxytone nouns only those which are dissyllabic can shift the accent.



Amongst these [v. § 5 (5)] must be included liquid stems, such as борода́ beard, голова́ head (contrast глава́ chapter).

Trisyllabic and polysyllabic nouns retain the same fixed accent.

For the *oxytone dissyllables* there are two sets of rules.

(a) The accent goes back on the root *only* in the nom. plur.

e.g. вдова́	widow	вдо́вы
волна́	wave	во́лны
игра́	game	и́гры
ре́ка	river	ре́ки
судья́	judge	су́дья
слуга́	servant	слу́ги
стрѣла́	arrow	стрѣ́лы
струна́	string	стру́ны
	(e.g. of violin)	
узда́	reins	у́зды

and a few others.

(β) The accent goes back to the stem in the acc. sing. as well.

e.g. рука́ hand руку́, ру́ки  
 (Occasionally, by analogy, жена́мъ, жена́ми, жена́хъ ;  
 се́страмъ, зе́млямъ, зве́здамъ are mistakenly used.)

борода́	beard	бо́роду, бо́роды
вода́	water	во́ду, во́ды
нога́	foot	но́гу, но́ги



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read  
for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



(2) Amongst such nouns, the following have the accented locative singular [v. § 30].

бровь	brow	печь	oven	связь	connection
грудь	breast	рѣчь	speech	часть	part
кость	bone	степь	steppe	плóщадь	
честь	honour	тѣнь	shadow		public square
ось	axle	цѣпь*	chain		

### § 32. THE "EUPHONIC" VOWELS o, e, ë.

In § 2 (7) and § 6 brief reference was made to the former vocalic values of ъ and ь, as short ѓ and ї, and to the aversion of the Russian language from heavy combinations of final consonants, especially when there are liquids (such as в, р and л) in the conglomeration.

Under these two heads simple phonetic changes, *which are written*, occur in *all* the declensions, and these rules must be applied to all of the declensions.

I. *Extrusion of ъ and ь when unaccented.* The ancient Russian for "day" was дѣнь-ѣ'. When ь became mute, being "open," the first vowel was transformed to e; hence the nominative дѣнь, genitive днѣ. Similarly днó bottom, gen. pl. донѣ (for дѣнь-ѣ', дѣнь).

This law may be tabulated:—

ѣ, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes o; unaccented disappears.

ь, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes e or ë; unaccented disappears, or is retained in spelling to soften the consonant.

---

\* Not to be confused with цѣпь flail.

e.g. лóбъ (formerly лѡбъ') forehead, gen. лѡ́а; ротъ (formerly рѡтъ') mouth, gen. ртá; левъ (formerly лѡвъ') lion, gen. лѡва\* ; сотъ, gen. of сто (for съто), one hundred; лёдъ ice (лѡдъ'), gen. лѡдá.\*

*Incidentally it may be stated here that the great complication in the accentuation of masculines arises from the loss of the final inflection of the nominative. Most Russian nouns retain the accent on the same syllable; but where the original inflection was formerly accented and has become mute (i.e. either ъ or ѣ), the accent had to be thrown back.*

*In the feminines and neuters the original inflection a, o, has been retained; hence the rules are much simpler.*

Similar instances are: пѡсъ dog, genitive пса; мигъ, but мгновѣнiе, both meaning moment, the latter should have been spelt мѡгновѣнiе; мѡлá mist, for мѡглá; возъ, verbal prefix meaning "up," but върастáть to grow up (for вѡрастáть); сонъ sleep, сна́; лёнъ linen, лѡнá, etc.

As a contrast: Russian, мѡдъ, мѡда mead (the drink), Old Russian, мѡдъ, мѡда; i.e. the original accent was on the stem.

Some other instances may illustrate the same point. All derivatives in ѣцъ (formerly ѣцъ) were once oxytone, i.e. accenting the termination ѣ'; hence, they "throw the accent forward" in the other inflections, and extrude the ѣ of the nominative which is merely epenthetic, a strengthening of the original ѣ (отѣцъ).

---

\* The ѣ is retained to indicate the soft sound.

So that the genitive of *отецъ* is *отца́*; so, too—

<i>купе́ць</i>	merchant	<i>купца́</i>
<i>вѣне́ць</i>	wreath	<i>вѣнца́</i>

*But*, where the *-ецъ* is unaccented, the accent is stable and the form merely abbreviated in spelling, e.g. *Нѣмецъ* German (for *Нѣмьць*), *Пѣмца*, etc.

Conversely in the genitive plurals in *ъ* or *ь*, *о*, *е*, *е* must be restored.

e.g. <i>яйцо́</i>	egg	<i>яи́ць</i> *
<i>зло́</i>	evil	<i>зо́ль</i>
<i>кольцо́</i>	ring	<i>ко́лець</i>
<i>письмо́</i>	letter	<i>пи́семь</i>
<i>окно́</i>	window	<i>о́конь</i>
<i>стекло́</i>	pane of glass	<i>сте́коль</i>
<i>крѣсло</i>	armchair	<i>крѣсель</i>
<i>овца́</i>	sheep	<i>ове́ць</i>
<i>судьба́</i>	fate	<i>суде́бь</i>
<i>ру́чка</i>	little hand	<i>ру́чекь</i>
<i>копѣйка</i>	the coin	<i>копѣекь</i>

*And observe that after a vowel the symbol ѣ replaces the symbol ь, but has the same value.*

e.g. *ше́я* neck, diminutive *ше́йка*, *ше́екъ*, i.e. *šeïka*, *šeïk*; *солове́й* nightingale, *соловьѣ́я*, *соловьѣ́вь*; *муравье́й* ant, *муравья́*, *муравья́вь*.

In these last two instances *ѣй* represents an original *ь'й*, which in Russian became *ѣй*. The original inflection would have been *соловь'й*, *соловь'я*.

II. *Insertion of o and e for euphony.* Similarly, heavy final combinations of consonants are lightened in

---

\* Irregular for *яе́ць*.

the nominative singular of masculines and genitive plurals of feminines and neuters; i.e. the terminations in ъ and ь.

Some instances have already been given; viz. *стекло́, кресло́, письмо́*.

Others are:—

		<i>Gen. Plur.</i>
ма́рка	a <i>mark</i> (German coin)	ма́рокъ
и́гла	needle	и́голь
и́гра	game	и́горъ
ро́зга	cane	ро́зогъ
се́стра	sister	се́стёръ or се́стръ
пѣ́сня	song	пѣ́сенъ
ба́рышня	“mademoiselle”	ба́рышепъ
со́тня	a body of one hundred	со́тенъ
ку́хня	kitchen	ку́хонъ or ку́хонь
земля́	earth	земѣль
ребро́	rib	ребе́рь
ведро́	ewer	ве́деръ

In the nominatives:—

		<i>Gen.</i>
орѣ́ль (pronounce <i>aryól</i> )	eagle	орла́
огóнь	fire	огня́
вѣ́теръ	wind	вѣ́тра
вѣ́хоръ	whirlwind	вѣ́хря
наёмъ	hire	найма́
боѣ́ць	warrior	бойца́
за́яць	hare	за́йца

Observe the vowel o or e is inserted according as the syllable is hard or soft.

Thus, too, тьмá darkness, тёмный dark, тщáтельно (for тъщáтельно) in vain, тощій lean, and compare Russian дочь, дóчери, daughter, with the Church Slavonic дщѣри (for дьщѣри), cf. θυγατέρες.\*

An apparent exception really confirms the rule, namely, that, when the effect of extruding the euphonic vowel would be to accumulate consonants, the vowel is retained.

e.g.	мертвѣць	corpse	мертвеца́
	близнець	twin	близнеца́

III. Nevertheless, some heavy combinations of final consonants are tolerated.

(1) In loan words.

e.g. шрифть type (from German) [v. § 11 (δ).]  
миністръ minister (from French)

(2) In the genitive plural of the abstract termination -ство.

e.g. общество́ from общество company  
министѣрствъ from министрѣрство ministry

(3) In a few words where resolution would not be easy.

e.g. жѣртва sacrifice жертвъ

(4) In such words as рубль (masculine) rouble, корабль ship (masculine like конь), the л is mute. [v. § 4 (9).]

(5) In the formation of predicative adjectives no vowel is inserted before р.

e.g. мудръ wise, быстръ swift. [v. § 36 (4).]

---

\* Whence падчерица, § 97.

IV. In the feminine in и of the third declension observe—

цѣрковь	church	цѣркви, цѣрковью
любовь	love	любови, любовью
вошь	louse	вши, вошью
ложь	lie	лжи, ложью
рожь	rye	ржи, рожью

But when **Любовь** is a girl's name it retains in "o" throughout; thus, **Любови, Любовью.**

## THE ADJECTIVE.

### § 33. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

(1) *The syntactical importance of the adjective in Russian.*

In English the adjectival function can be expressed in many really irregular ways; e.g. by a noun, "the village pump"; by combinations of adjectives and nouns, "the Civil Service Examination," even to the point of ambiguity, e.g. "the Women's Red Cross Slavery Abolition League"; also, vulgarly, by adverbs, "this 'ere bloke." In German, also, long compound nouns are yet more used to show the dependence.

Russian adjectives are fully declined in gender, number, and case.

In Russian, composition of words is rare and occasional, and fully declined adjectives must be used.

e.g. зубная боль tooth-ache

правительственные указы government decrees  
баранья шерсть sheep's wool, etc.

Cf. in French, le ministère de l'intérieur, Home Office; les perquisitions militaires, war demands.



(2) In addition to this, Russian frequently prefers an adjective where other languages use other forms.

e.g. стеклѣнная бутылка a glass bottle, une bouteille de ver; St. Elias' day Ильи́нъ день; Igor's Army Ёгоре́въ полкъ; the local custom та́мошній или здѣ́шній обы́чай (from тамъ there, здѣ́сь here); a reindeer's horns олѣ́ньи ро́га.

Such adjectives are called *possessive*, e.g. Петро́въ пра́здникъ St. Peter's holiday; Цари́цыно село́ the Empress's village; or *descriptive*, e.g. бо́жій храмъ God's Temple.

Ordinary adjectives when used with nouns are called *attributive*, e.g. до́брый good, худо́жественный artistic; i.e. those not attached to some particular noun, and not serving as a kind of inflected genitive.

(3) Except in the nominative (e masculine, я feminine and neuter) there is no distinction of gender in the plural adjective.

(4) Russian discards the copula "I am, he is," etc., and uses a special form as the *predicative* adjective; this form being the nominative, singular and plural, of the old simple form of the attributive adjective.

e.g. я Гео́ргій	I am George
онъ столя́ръ	he is a carpenter
они́ миѣ́ знако́мы	they are known to me

(5) The attributive adjective can in general have two forms as stated in the preceding section (4), one full, when agreeing with a noun, the other predicative; the latter only used and only surviving with a nomina-



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

(6) The accentuation of the determinative, possessive and descriptive forms, is constant; that of the simple form is very difficult, as difficult as the nominal forms which it follows. We have seen [§ 25] how the loss of the nominative suffix *ъ, ъ* has confused the rules for accentuation, and [§§ 27 and 29] the slighter variances in the neuters and feminines. All these rules come in to complicate the formation of the predicative adjective.

(7) In modern Russian no instance survives of adjectives in the third declension.

(8) In the eighteenth century, when Lomonósov (1711–1765) created the modern Russian script out of the old Cyrillic, and set hard and fast rules for Russian, the grammarians introduced some unnecessary complications in the spelling of the determinative forms; e.g. *но́вый* new, *ди́кий* wild, for *но́вой, ди́кой* (*но́вые* masc. pl., *но́выя* fem. and neut. pl.).

(9) The adjective may acquire a substantival meaning, but is still declined as an adjective.

e.g. <i>городово́й</i>	policeman
<i>портно́й</i>	tailor
<i>насе́кóмое</i>	insect
<i>столо́вая</i>	dining-room
<i>де́тская</i>	nursery

#### § 34. THE SIMPLE, POSSESSIVE AND DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) For *reference* this is an example of the simple adjective. These forms are now disused save as stated in § 33 (5).

## Dear

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	до́рогъ	до́рого	дорога́	дороги́
Acc.	Like N. or G.	до́рого	дорогу́	Like N. or G.
Gen.	дорога́		дороги́	дороги́хъ
Dat.	дорогу́		дорогѣ́	дороги́мъ
Instr.	дороги́мъ		дорого́ю	дороги́ми
Loc.	дорого́мъ		дорогѣ́	дороги́хъ

## Good

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	до́брь	до́бро	до́бра	до́бри
Acc.	Like N. or G.	до́бро	до́бру	Like N. or G.
Gen.	до́бра		до́бры	до́брыхъ
Dat.	до́бру		до́брѣ́	до́брымъ
Instr.	до́брымъ		до́брою	до́брыми
Loc.	до́бромъ		до́брѣ́	до́брыхъ

(2) *The formation of possessive adjectives and examples.*

Possessive adjectives are formed from names in the first and second declensions; those from the first end in -овъ, those from the second in -ывъ, -инъ.

The accentuation is *constant throughout all* the cases. Adjectives in -овъ, -евъ derived from monosyllables generally accent the termination: Петро́въ Peter's, Царё́въ the Tsar's. Adjectives in -овъ, -евъ derived from other names, not monosyllables, retain the accent as in the name: e.g. Алексе́й, Алексе́евъ; Алекса́ндръ, Алекса́ндровъ.

Adjectives in -инъ are similarly declined, and retain the accent of the name.

e.g. Сáша	(Alexander)	Сáшинъ
Никíта*	Nikita	Никíтинъ
Пльá	Elias	Пльáинъ
Трóица	Trinity	Трóицынъ
сестрá	sister	сестрáинъ
Царíца	Tsaritsa	Царíцынъ
дýдя	uncle	дýдинъ

*Note.*—Nouns in -ца take -цынъ; and мужъ husband, братъ brother, госпóдь Lord, irregularly form мýжнишъ, брáтнинъ, госпóдень.

The two following examples illustrate the declensions:—

<i>Peter's</i>				
	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	Петрóвъ	Петрóво	Петрóва	Петрóвы
Acc.	Like N. or G.	Петрóво	Петрóву	Like N. or G.
Gen.	Петрóва		Петрóвой	Петрóвыхъ
Dat.	Петрóву		Петрóвой	Петрóвымъ
Instr.	Петрóвымъ		Петрóвою	Петрóвыми
Loc.	Петрóвомъ		Петрóвой	Петрóвыхъ

<i>Lord's</i>				
	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	госпóдень	госпóдне	госпóдня	госпóдня
Acc.	Like N. or G.	госпóдне	госпóдню	Like N. or G.
Gen.	госпóдня		госпóдней	госпóднихъ
Dat.	госпóдню		госпóдней	госпóднимъ
Instr.	госпóднимъ		госпóднею	госпóдними
Loc.	госпóднемъ		госпóдней	госпóднихъ

\* Νικήτης.

*Note* that very many family names end in -ОВЪ and -ИНЪ, and are similarly declined, *except* that the locative singular masculine is -Ѣ.

e.g. въ Пётрѡвомъ письмѣ in Peter's letter, but я говорѣлъ о Пётрѡвѣ I was speaking of Petrŏv.

### (3) *Formation of descriptive adjectives.*

Most of these adjectives are soft, being formed from nouns by adding -iŭ to the stem. The nominative singular is, mase. -iŭ, neut. -ьс, fem. -ья; and the accent is *constant* and *always* that of the noun. The accusative singular feminine is also in -ью.

Otherwise their declension is like that of the soft determinatives. [v. § 35 (2).]

*Observe* that the rules in § 5 as to mutation of consonants must be applied in the formation of these adjectives.

e.g. волкъ wolf, вѡлчій, вѡлчье, вѡлчья  
 Бѡгъ god, бѡжій, бѡжье, бѡжья  
 лиса fox, лѣсій, лѣсье, лѣсья  
 дѣвица or дѣвица maiden, дѣвичій, дѣвичье, дѣвичья  
 пёсь dog, пѣсій, пѣсье, пѣсья, i.e. пѣсья звѣзда  
 the dog-star

*Also* дѣрево wood, деревянный wooden  
 кожа leather, кожаный of leather

This termination -янный is hard, and is generally applied to words denoting materials.

## § 35. THE DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) *The scheme and the formation.*

This form of adjective is the most common in Russian, embracing all adjectives except the simpler declensions stated in § 34 (1) and (2).

The paradigms inserted *infra* are to illustrate the application of the rules in § 5 to these adjectives.

A short historical statement will explain away the apparent complications.

In Old Slavonic there was a 3rd person pronoun declined as follows:—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	и	е	я	и	я	я
Acc.	и	е	ю	я	я	я
Gen.	его́	его́	ея	ихъ	ихъ	ихъ
Dat.	ему́	ему́	ей	имъ	имъ	имъ
Instr.	имъ	имъ	ею	ими	ими	ими
Loc.	емъ	емъ	ей	ихъ	ихъ	ихъ

By adding this vocalic pronoun on to the simple adjectival forms, like a postponed article, a *determinative* form was obtained, which in the older language had a slightly different meaning, such as is given in English by the use of the definite article.

In modern Russian the simple form is obsolete in the Nom., but a survey of the paradigm of the full adjective will show where the fusion has taken place, e.g. мо́лѡдъ, мо́лѡдѡй, i.e. мо́лѡдъи, and so on.

Remember that in Russian the *r* of the genitive singular is sounded *в*. [v. § 5 (3) (3).]

<i>Singular.</i>						<i>Plural.</i>						
Masc.		Neut.		Fem.		Masc.		Neut.		Fem.		
Hard	Soft*	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	
N.	ый	ий	ое	ее	ая	яя	ые	ие	ья	ія	ья	ія
	ой											
	accented											
A.	As N or G		ое	ее	ую	юю	N. or G.	Nom.		N. or G.		
	Masc. and Neut.						All genders.					
G.	ого		яго		ой	ей	ыхъ		ихъ			
	ого											
	accented											
D.	ому		ему		ой	ей	ымъ		имъ			
I.	ымъ		имъ		ою†	ею	ыми		ими			
L.	омъ		емъ		ой	ей	ыхъ		ихъ			

The eighteenth century grammarians are responsible for two unnecessary complications.

(i) The invariable nom. sing. masc. hard should be -ой, as *ъ* when sounded in Russian becomes *о*. [v. § 32, I.]

But it was decreed that the spelling should be -оü, only when the termination was accented; otherwise -ый.

Consequently in guttural stems [v. § 5 (3)] this -ый had to be spelled -иü.

e.g. нÓвый new, дѣкiü wild

But in such cases дѣкiй and similar words are still sounded d'ikəï, as though spelt дѣкой; whereas дѣкiе, where the *i* is there of right, is pronounced d'ikiyě.

\* There are *no* soft adjectives accented on the termination except palatal stems (nominally hard).

† Commonly contracted, v. § 28 (2).



(ii) The only plural nominative form *should* be -e. The -я is purely orthographic, and in all cases the e and the я in -ья, -ье, -ья, -ье, -ия, -ие are sounded alike, viz. yě.

e.g. дѳбрыя дѳбрыѳ, худья (худѳй bad) khudyě

(iii) When the termination is accented, it is usual to write -ѳго and not -аго.

e.g. храбѳго of the brave man (khrábrəvə); but чужѳго of the strange man (čuzųovə).

#### TABLE OF ADJECTIVES.

<i>Hard.</i>		Full form.	Short form.
	Masc.	-ый мѳлый	мѳль gentle
	Neut.	-ое мѳло	мѳло
	Fem.	-ая мѳлая	мѳла
<i>Soft.</i>	Masc.	-ий сѳнѳй	сѳвь blue
	Neut.	-ее сѳнее	сѳце
	Fem.	-ья сѳняя	сѳня

#### (2) Examples of the determinative adjective.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	бѳлыѳ	бѳло	бѳлая
Acc.	N. or G.	бѳло	бѳлую
Gen.	бѳлаѳ		бѳлоѳ
Dat.	бѳлому		бѳлоѳ
Instr.	бѳлыми		бѳлою
Loc.	бѳломи		бѳлоѳ
<i>Plural.</i>			
Nom.	бѳлыѳ	бѳлыя	бѳлыя
Acc.	N. or G.	бѳлыя	N. or G.
Gen.		бѳлыхѳ	
Dat.		бѳлыми	
Instr.		бѳлыми	
Loc.		бѳлыхѳ	

бѳль, бѳла, бѳло, бѳлы white.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	барáнiй	барáнъе	барáнъя
Acc.	N. or G.	барáнъе	барáнью
Gen.	барáнъяю		барáнъей
Dat.	барáнъему		барáнъей
Instr.	барáнъимъ		барáнъею
Loc.	барáнъемъ		барáнъей

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	барáнъи	барáнъи	барáнъи
Acc.	N. or G.	барáнъи	N. or G.
Gen.		барáнъихъ	
Dat.		барáнъимъ	
Instr.		барáнъими	
Loc.		барáнъихъ	

барáнiй, барáнъя, барáнъе, барáнъи of a ram [v. § 34 (3)].

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	велiкiй	велiкое	велiкая
Acc.	N. or G.	велiкое	велiкую
Gen.	велiкаго		велiкой
Dat.	велiкому		велiкой
Instr.	велiкимъ		велiкою
Loc.	велiкомъ		велiкой

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	велiкiе	велiкiя	
Acc.	N. or G.	велiкiя	N. or G.
Gen.		велiкихъ	
Dat.		велiкимъ	
Instr.		велiкими	
Loc.		велiкихъ	

велiкъ, великá, великó, великi great.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	большо́й	большо́е	больша́я
Acc.	N. or G.	большо́е	большу́ю
Gen.	большо́го		большо́й
Dat.	большо́му		большо́й
Instr.	большо́мъ		большо́ю
Loc.	большо́мъ		большо́й

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	больші́е	больші́я	
Acc.	N. or G.	больші́я	N. or G.
Gen.		больші́хъ	
Dat.		больші́мъ	
Instr.		больші́ми	
Loc.		больші́хъ	

Not used predicatively. большо́й, big, large.  
Thus : чужо́й, чужь, чу́же, чужа́, чу́жи strange.

<i>Singular.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	свѣ́жій	свѣ́жее	свѣ́жая
Acc.	N. or G.	свѣ́жее	свѣ́жую
Gen.	свѣ́жаго*		свѣ́жей
Dat.	свѣ́жему		свѣ́жей
Instr.	свѣ́жимъ		свѣ́жею
Loc.	свѣ́жемъ		свѣ́жей

<i>Plural.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	свѣ́жіе	свѣ́жія	
Acc.	N. or G.	свѣ́жія	N. or G.
Gen.		свѣ́жихъ	
Dat.		свѣ́жимъ	
Instr.		свѣ́жими	
Loc.		свѣ́жихъ	

свѣ́жъ, свѣ́жа́, свѣ́жо́, свѣ́жі́ fresh. Thus : хоро́шій,  
хоро́шь, хорошо́, хороша́, хороши́ excellent.

\* Sounded svěživā.

### § 36. THE FORMATION OF THE PREDICATIVES.

Consult § 32 regarding the “insertion” of *o* and *e* to avoid an accumulation of final consonants.

(1) The following determinative adjectives have *no special* predicative form, and predicatively the full form must be used:—

(*a*) All adjectives in *-скій*, e.g. *а́нгли́йскій* English, *фра́нцу́зскій* French, *ру́сскій* Russian, *горо́дско́й* municipal, etc.

(*б*) *большо́й* big (physically): *-вели́къ* is used, e.g. *э́тотъ мужъ вели́къ* this man is tall; but *э́тотъ домъ большо́й*, this house is big.

(*γ*) Adjectives denoting materials in *-янный*, e.g. *дерева́нный* wooden, *сере́брянный* silver, etc., and the descriptive adjectives, such as *бара́ний* of a ram, v. § 34 (3).

(2) The following adjectives are *only* used in the predicative form: *ра́дъ* glad, *гора́здъ* skilful.

e.g. *я́ о́чень ра́дъ* I am very glad, *она́ на всё́ гора́зда* she is clever in everything.

(3) *Possessives* [v. § 34 (2)] are *only* declined with the simple forms.

*Possessives* in *-овъ* never shift their accent.

*Possessives* in *-инъ* are thus accented: *сестри́нь*, *сестри́на*, *сестри́но*, *сестри́ны*, *as predicatives*.

(4) All other adjectives have both forms, and the predicative has to be deduced from the determinative.

In polysyllabic derivative adjectives there is generally no change of accent.

e.g. мѹжественный masculine, мѹжественъ, мѹжественна, мѹжественно

But in simpler original adjectives there is practically no rule but experience. A few instances may be given.

e.g. (i) нѹвый new, новъ, новá, нѹво, нѹвы

Thus, too, бодръ gay, быстръ swift, великъ big, гордъ proud, твердъ hard, тихъ still, толстъ fat, старъ old, цѣлъ whole, чистъ clean. [v. § 32, II.]

Thus, too :—

тѣмный dark, тѣмень, темна́, темно́, темны́  
красный red, красенъ, красна́, красно́, красны́  
тѣплый hot, тѣпель, тепла́, тепло́, теплы́  
чѣрный black, чѣренъ, черна́, черно́, черны́

(ii) го́лый naked, голъ, гола́, голо́, го́лы

Thus, too, высѹкъ lofty, далѣкъ far, тяжѣль heavy, бѣ́лый white, ширѹкъ far.

e.g. далѣкій, далѣкъ, далека́, далеко́, далѣки

(iii) во́льный free, волѣнь, вольна́, вольно́, вольны́

Thus, too, лѣгкій light (in weight), лѣгокъ, легка́, легко́, легкí ; сѣльный powerful, ýмный sensible.

(iv) сѹхой dry, сухá, сѹхо, сѹхí

Thus, too, босъ barefooted, глухъ deaf, гнилъ foul, дѹрогъ dear, живъ alive, мѹлодь young, нагъ naked, нѣмъ dumb, плохъ poorly, слѣпъ blind, хромъ lame, etc. ; больно́й sick, боленъ, больна́, бо́льно, больны́ ; честно́й or чѣстный honest, чѣстенъ, честна́, чѣстно, честны́.

### § 37. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Formation.*

(1) The Russian adjective has two degrees of comparison, comparative and superlative.

The comparative is in two forms: uninflected, e.g. *бóльше радъ*, from *радъ* glad; inflected, e.g. *глубже* deeper, from *глубокий*.

The inflected comparative has a predicative and determinative form, e.g. *бѣлѣе*, *бѣлѣйшій* whiter.

It is formed from the positive in two ways—by adding *-ѣе*, *-ѣйшій* to the stem, the accent generally shifting to the termination; or by adding *-е*, *-ьшій* to the stem, the accent remaining on the radical syllable.

*-ѣе*, *-ѣйшій*, has become the *regular* form.

When adding either termination, *-ѣе* or *-е*, the rules for the mutation of consonants [v. § 5] must be strictly observed, and should be re-perused before the student proceeds any further with this section. In addition, he should remember [v. § 2 (3)] that in older Russian *ѣ* had a value approximating to *я*, and therefore, just as *к*, *г*, *х* + *я* in modern Russian make *ча*, *жа*, *ша*, so, too, in the comparatives *к*, *г*, *х* + *-ѣе*, *-ѣйшій*, make *чайшій*, *жайшій*, *шайшій*.

Similarly, *ск* or *ст* + *-ѣйшій* or *-е* make *-ще*, *-щайшій*, e.g. *чѣстый* pure, *чѣще*, *чѣщайшій*; *плóскій* flat, *плóщайшій*.

(2) No inflections for the superlative exist.

The comparative form is used, or the positive with suitable pronouns or adverbs. So, too, “beautiful,” “content” in English have no inflected degrees of comparison.

In some cases, where the shorter comparative is used, the longer form is reserved as a superlative.

e.g. **высо́кій** high, **вы́ше**, **вы́сшій**; superlative **высоча́йшій**.

(3) The substitutes for the superlative are:—

(a) The prefixing of **най-** to the positive or comparative.

e.g. **Вотъ наи-лучшій примѣръ.**

This is the best example.

**Это наи-мѣньшая сума.**

This is the least sum.

(β) The prefixing of **самый**, self, to the positive or comparative.

e.g. **Это самая интересная книга изъ всѣхъ мною прочитанныхъ.**

This is the most interesting book of those I have read.

**Нашъ домъ самый красивый въ деревнѣ.**

Our home is the prettiest in the village.

(γ) The addition of a form of **весь**, all, to the comparative, either **всего́** or **всѣхъ**.

e.g. **Эта книга интереснѣе всѣхъ которыя я читалъ.**

This book is the most interesting of any I have read.

**Вашъ совѣтъ полезнѣе всѣхъ.**

Your advice is the best.



- (δ) The absolute superlative, as in English, is indicated by the positive with such words as *очень* very, etc.

e.g. *Обѣдъ былъ очень вкусенъ.*

The dinner was very tasty.

- (ε) The superlative also can be formed by using—*въ высшей стѣпени* in the highest degree.

e.g. *Онъ въ высшей стѣпени великодушенъ.*

He is most generous.

### § 38. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Rules.*

I. The uninflected form, i.e. with *болѣе* more, is used:—

(α) With adjectives like *радъ* glad.

(β) At discretion with lengthy adjectives, e.g. *болѣе глубокий* deeper.

(γ) When there is a comparison of two adjectives.

e.g. *Рѣка Москвѣ болѣе широка нежели глубока.*

The river Moscow is broader than it is deep.

(δ) With adjectives (such as participles, derivative words, etc.), which it would be inconvenient to lengthen any more.

e.g. *Никогда не видѣла своего мужа болѣе оскорбленнымъ.*

She had never seen her husband more grieved.

*У него болѣе живóй умъ.*

He has a keener mind.

(ε) Adjectives ending in *-скій*, *-ско́й*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

V. There are two methods of translating “than” :—

(1) The use of чѣмъ, or rarely нежели: when a phrase follows the comparison.

e.g. Э́тотъ у́ро́къ лѣ́гче чѣ́мъ (не́жели) мы́ ду́мали.  
This lesson is easier than we thought.

(2) When the object of comparison is a noun, the noun may be in the genitive.

e.g. Ю́ри́й у́мнѣ́е сво́его́ бра́та Ку́зьмы.  
George is more sensible than his brother  
Ку́зьма́.

### § 39. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

#### *Examples.*

I. The regular form of comparison is -ѣе, -ѣйшій, predicative indeclinable and declinable.

e.g. любѣ́зны́й amiable, любѣ́знѣ́е, любѣ́знѣ́йшій  
-ѣе is often abbreviated to -ѣи.

When the positive cannot in *any* part of its declension throw the accent on to the ending, the original accentuation is retained.

e.g. справедлѣ́вый just, справедлѣ́вѣ́е, справедлѣ́вѣ́йшій

II. Another very common form is -е, -е́шій, the adjective retaining its original accent.

This is nearly always used when the positive drops a suffix, e.g. -ный, -кій, and the comparative termination is attached to the root.

With a very few adjectives the predicative neuter -ше, of the declinable form -ишій, is used alternatively with -че.

(a) Where the suffix of the positive is retained:—

e.g.	крѣпкій	powerful	крѣпче	крѣпчайшій
	лёгкій	light (in weight)	лёгче	легчайшій
	мѣлкій	small	мѣльче	мельчайшій
	бойкій	brisk	бойчѣе (a modern form)	
	ловкій	clever	ловчѣе	
	гóрькій	bitter	гóрше	

(b) Where the suffix of the positive is dropped in the undeclined comparative, but generally retained in the determinative:—

e.g.	высо́кій	high	вы́ше	вы́сшій*	высоча́йшій
	глубо́кій	deep	глуб́же		глубоча́йшій
	ни́зкій	low	ни́же	ни́зшій	нижа́йшій
	пóздній*	late	пóзже*		позднѣ́йшій
	бли́зкій	near	бли́же		ближа́йшій
	у́зкій	narrow	у́же		
	рѣ́дкій	rare	рѣ́же		рѣдча́йшій
	сла́дкій	sweet	сла́ще†		сладча́йшій
	кро́ткій	gentle	[кро́че]‡		кротча́йшій
	коро́ткій	short	коро́че		кратча́йшій
	то́нкій	thin	то́ньше		тонча́йшій
	широ́кій	broad	ши́ре		широча́йшій
	далё́кій	far	да́льше		дальнѣ́йшій

\* V. § 4 (7) and (9).

† A Church Slav mutation from ть.

‡ More usually бо́лѣе кро́ткій.

(c) When the positive is not altered, there being no suffix :—

e.g.	твёрдый	hard	твёрже	твёрдѣйшій
	богатый	rich	{ богаче богатѣ }	богатѣйшій
	худой	bad, lean	{ хуже (bad) худѣ (lean) }	худшій худѣйшій
	плоский	flat	плосче	
	тихий	quiet	тише	тишайшій
	строгий	stern	строже	строжайшій
	дорогой	dear	дороже	дражайшій
	молодой	young	моложе	младшій
	старый	old	старше	старшій
	крутой	steep	круче	крутѣйшій
	дешёвый	cheap	дешевле	
	пустой	{ desolate empty }	пуще	пущій
			пустѣ	пустѣйшій
	чистый	clean	чище	чистѣйшій

It will be observed that in modern Russian the mutations mostly only occur in the uninflected form of the comparative.

Note, too—

дóлгий long, дóльше (irregular, due to analogy of бóльше)  
далёкий far, дáльше or дáлѣ, дальнѣйшій (from дáльный)  
рáно (adverb) early, рáньше or рáнѣ

With these few exceptions the comparison of the adjective is regular; and all derivative adjectives, e.g. знаменитый famous, proceed in accordance with the rule, знаменитѣ, знаменитѣйшій.

So, too, сердитый angry.

The inflected comparative of such words is rarely used; the superlative replaced, as stated in § 37 (3).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



## § 40 (2). TABLE OF RUSSIAN PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

кто who?	кто	что what?	кой* which?	чей whose?	какъ how?	гдѣ where?	куда whither?	откуда whence?	какой which?	какой what sort?	когда when?	почему† why?	сколько how much?
кто	кто	что	кой* кой*	чей чей	какъ якъ*	гдѣ гдѣ	куда куда	откуда откуда	какой какой	какой какой	когда когда	почему† почему	сколько сколько
тогоъ tive )	тогоъ	то	свой† его ея§ ихъ	его ея§ ихъ	такъ такъ	тамъ тамъ	туда туда	оттуда оттуда	такой такой таковой	такой такой	тогда тогда	потому потому	столько
тогоъ tive	тогоъ	это			этакъ этакъ	здесь здесь			этакій (эдакій)	этакій (эдакій)			
онный	онный	оно											
сей	сей	сіе сѣ			сякъ* сякъ*		сюда сюда	отсюда отсюда					
каждый every весь all всякій everyone	каждый каждый весь all всякій everyone	всѣ			всѣ таки anyway	вездѣ повсюду every- where		отовсюду отовсюду		всякій every	всегда always		

сing.	я	онъ она оно	кто	что	его ея свой †	нашъ вашъ ихъ** свой †	какъ-нибудь какъ-то	когда-то где-то где-нибудь	куда-то куда-нибудь	откуда-то	нѣ-который some	нѣ-когда some- time	нѣ-сколько
”	ты	твой	нѣкто	нѣчто	нѣкій	нѣкій a certain	никуда	ни-откуда	никуда	ни-откуда	никакой	никогда	нисколько
”	мы	нашъ	никто	ничего	ничей	ничей	никакъ	нигде	никуда	ни-откуда	никакой	никогда	нисколько
”	вы	вашъ	самъ				такъ-же этакъ-же	туда-же сюда-же	туда-же туда-же	оттуда-же отсюда-же	такой-же этакой-же	тогда-же	
”	они ¶ онъ ¶	ихъ** свой †	другой	инѣчто			иначе	иначе	иначе		иначе	иногда	
”	себя †		иной				иначе	иначе	иначе		иначе	иногда	
”	они ¶ онъ ¶	ихъ** свой †	иной				иначе	иначе	иначе		иначе	иногда	

† Or with any suitable preposition, e.g. причёмъ. ‡ Reflexive for all persons. § Genitives, cf. Latin eius.

¶ только, like Latin tantum, means “only.” ¶ Both sounded onі. \*\* ихній vulgar.



## § 41. EXAMPLES OF THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative* (singular and plural).

N. V.	кто (khtó) for persons	что (štǒ) for things
Acc.	кого́ (kavó) „ „	что „ „
Gen.	кого́ ,	чего́ (čivó) „ „
Dat.	кому́	чему́ „ „
Instr.	къ́мъ	чѣ́мъ
Loc.	комъ „	чѣ́мъ „ „

ко́торый (which of several?) and ка́кой (of what sort?) are declined adjectivally.

## кой which?

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	кой	ко́с	ко́я	ко́и
Acc.	N. or G.	ко́е	ко́ю	N. or G.
Gen.	ко́его*		ко́ей	ко́ихъ
Dat.	ко́ему		ко́ей	ко́имъ
Instr.	ко́имъ		ко́ею	ко́ими
Loc.	ко́емъ		ко́ей	ко́ихъ

## чей whose?

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	чей	чье́	чья	чи
Acc.	N. or G.	чье́	чью	N. or G.
Gen.	чье́го (čivó)		чьей	чьихъ
Dat.	чьему́		чьей	чьимъ
Instr.	чьимъ		чье́ю	чьими
Loc.	чьѣ́мъ		чьей	чьихъ

\* Sounded kóyivə.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

e.g. Кто бы ни появля́лся у окна́, въ тогó немéдленно стрѣля́ли.

Whoever appeared at a window, (at him) they instantly shot.

Что бы вы ни дѣла́ли, вы э́тимъ го́рю не помóжете.  
Whatever you do, you will not remedy the sorrow thereby.

### III. *Demonstratives.*

#### ТОТЪ that

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	ТОТЪ	ТО	ТА	ТѢ
Acc.	N. or G.	ТО	ТУ	N. or G.
Gen.	ТОГО́*		ТОЙ	ТѢХЪ
Dat.	ТОМУ́		ТОЙ	ТѢМЪ
Instr.	ТѢМЪ		ТОЮ	ТѢМИ
Loc.	ТОМЪ		ТОЙ	ТѢХЪ

#### ЭТОТЪ this

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i> All genders.
Nom.	ЭТОТЪ	ЭТО	ЭТА	ЭТИ
Acc.	N. or G.	ЭТО	ЭТУ	N. or G.
Gen.	ЭТОГО		ЭТОЙ	ЭТИХЪ
Dat.	ЭТОМУ		ЭТОЙ	ЭТИМЪ
Instr.	ЭТИМЪ		ЭТОЮ	ЭТИМИ
Loc.	ЭТОМЪ		ЭТОЙ	ЭТИХЪ

#### О́НЫЙ that

<i>Sing.</i>	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.				О́НЫЕ, О́НЫЯ
Acc.	Like any hard adjective			О́НЫХЪ
Gen.	in -ЫЙ			О́НЫХЪ
Dat.				О́НЫМЪ
Instr.				О́НЫМИ
Loc.				О́НЫХЪ

\* Sounded tavó.

сей this				
<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	сей	сі́е сѣ	сі́я	сі́и
Acc.	N. or G.	сі́е сѣ	сі́ю	N. or G.
Gen.	сего́*		сей	сѣхъ
Dat.	семѹ		сей	симъ
Instr.	симъ		се́ю	сі́ми
Loc.	сѣмъ		сей	сѣхъ

*Consult* § 2 (3).

All the rest of the declinable pronouns on the demonstrative lines in the table follow the regular forms of the determinative adjectives without variation. e.g. тако́й, таково́й such as that; э́такіи́ such as this, etc.

*Remarks.*—Practically only тотъ and э́тотъ are used in modern Russian. о́ный is found in legal documents, and сей in set phrases; e.g. се́годня (sívód'nyá) to-day, се́часъ in a minute, до сѣхъ поръ up to the present, сі́ю ми́нѹту this very minute.

#### IV. *Universal Pronouns.*

всѣ́кій of all sorts, and ка́ждый each, are declined like the determinative adjectives.

весь, all, drops the vowel “e” [v. § 32, I].

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	весь	всѣ	вся	всѣ
Acc.	N. or G.	всѣ	всю	N. or G.
Gen.	всего́†		всей	всѣхъ
Dat.	всемѹ		всей	всѣмъ
Instr.	всѣмъ		все́ю	всѣ́ми
Loc.	всѣмъ		всей	всѣхъ

\* Sounded sívó.

† Sounded fsívó.

V. *Personal Pronouns and Possessives.**Singular.*

	1st pers.	2nd pers.	3rd pers.			Reflexive.
			Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	
Nom.	я	ты	онъ	оно́	она́	—
Acc.	меня́	тебя́	его́*		её	себя́
Gen.	меня́	тебя́	его́		ея́ †	себя́
Dat.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	ему́		ей	себѣ́
Instr.	мно́ю	тобо́ю	имъ		ею́	собо́ю
	мно́й	тобо́й				собо́й
Loc.	мнѣ́	тебѣ́	ёмъ		ей	себѣ́

*Plural.*

Nom.	мы́	вы́	они́	они́	они́ ‡	As singular.
A.G.L.	насъ	васъ		ихъ		
Dat.	намъ	вамъ		имъ		
Instr.	ва́ми	ва́ми		ими́		

The close similarity of some of these forms with the Latin pronouns will strike the student, e.g. *tibi* тебѣ́, *sibi* себѣ́.

Refer back to § 2 (3) and § 35 (1).

The possessives *мой*, *твой*, *свой* are declined like *кой* [v. § 41, I.], but accent the last syllable of the terminations uniformly; e.g. *моё*, *моя́*, *моёй*, *моего́*, *моему́*, *мои́*, etc.

*нашъ* our, and *вашъ* your, are declined alike, viz. :

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	нашъ	на́ше	на́ша	на́ши
Acc.	N. or G.	на́ше	на́шу	N. or G.
Gen.	на́шего		на́шей	на́шихъ
Dat.	на́шему		на́шей	на́шимъ
Instr.	на́шимъ		на́шею	на́шими
Loc.	на́шемъ		на́шей	на́шихъ

\* Sounded *yivó*, *yim*, etc. † Commonly sounded like acc. *её*.

‡ Sounded like *они́*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



у него́ with him [*chez lui*]  
 съ ни́ми with them (sound sními)  
 близь нея́ near her  
 на него́ against him (sound nańivó)  
 на немъ on it (sound nanyóm)

*But* его́ ра́ди for his sake (the preposition follows)  
 око́ло его́ до́ма near his house  
 подъ ихъ вла́стью under their power, etc.

In these two instances egó and ихъ are possessive pronouns, not governed by the preposition.

(3) As in the nouns and adjectives, the instrumental singular feminine -ою, -ею, is often shortened to -оѣ, -еѣ.

(4) As the verbs mostly have full personal inflections, the pronouns are not added except for emphasis.

e.g. кля́немъ	we swear
слы́шу	I hear
понима́ешь?	do you understand?

## VI. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are formed, as will be seen in the table in various ways, by prefixes and suffixes; cf. English who, whoever, whoso, whosoever.

(1) Prefixing нѣ́- accented.

(2) Adding ни́будь (i.e. as it may be, from бу́дь, imperative of бы́ть). [v. § 57, II. and § 82, III.]

(3) Prefixing кое- with a *distributive* sense.

e.g. гдѣ́-ни́-бу́дь	somewhere or other
ко́с-гдѣ́	here and there
ко́е-кто́	various people (say)
<i>But</i> нѣ́которыя	some people (say)

(4) Adding -то. This suffix may be used with nouns as well, and gives an ironic or vague sense.

e.g. **человѣкъ-то** that kind of man  
**какой-то** some sort or other  
**кто-то** somebody you know who

## VII. *The Negative Pronouns.*

These are formed by prefixing **ни-** *not*.

When declined with prepositions the compound breaks up, and the preposition precedes the pronoun immediately.

e.g. **ни на когó** against no one  
**ни на какомъ мѣстѣ** not on any place

In Russian a negative pronoun requires a negative verb, and, contrary to modern English practice, a double negative affirms the negative, and does not destroy it.

e.g. **Никогдá не было войны́ похóжей на тепѣрешнюю.**  
 Never was there a war like the present war.  
**Я ниждѣ́ не видѣлъ ва́шего брата́.**  
 I could not see your brother anywhere.

But consult § 85.

## VIII. *The Pronouns of Identity.*

(1) By affixing -же to any demonstrative, identity is implied.

e.g. **эготъ-же** the same as this  
**таковóй-же** the same sort as that

(2) The words **самъ** and **самы́й**.

**Самъ** means "self"; as in English, I myself **я самъ**.



	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	самъ	самó	самá	самѣ
Acc.	самогó	самó	самý†	N. or G.
Gen.	самогó*		самóй	самѣхъ
Dat.	самомý		самóй	самѣмъ
Instr.	самѣмъ		самóю	самѣми
Loc.	самóмъ		самóй	самѣхъ

As regards the soft plural самѣ, cf. § 40 (1) (3). It has been carried all through.

Самѣй means “the same,” and is declined like a regular determinative adjective.

For its use to form the superlative, v. § 37 (3).

### IX. *The Pronouns of Difference.*

The meanings of другóй and ино́й should be marked. другóй is “other,” Latin *alius*, Greek ἄλλος, i.e. anything indeterminate, not what is being thought of. ино́й is “some other,” Latin *ceteri*, Greek ἕτεροι, a more or less determinate object.

e.g. Нѣкоторые э́того не мо́гутъ поня́ть.

Some cannot grasp this (fact).

Иные мо́гутъ подúмать что онъ сошёлъ съ умá.

Some (*quidam*, certain people) may think he has gone mad.

Однѣ, однѣ́ [v. § 2 (3)], the plural of оди́нъ one, also means “some”; cf. English, the one says, the other . . .

So, too, иногда́ sometimes, from time to time (definite)

нѣкогда́ sometimes (uncertain)

когда́-то at some time or other (indeterminate)

прóчие, прóчїя means “the rest,” “the remainder.”

In the singular it occurs in the phrase:—

въ прóчемъ for the rest (of the argument, etc.).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## THE VERB.

## § 42 (2). PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

*The Parts of the Russian Verb.*

(i) The Russian verb presents little difficulty in comparison with many other modern languages. As was remarked in § 10, the forms of conjugation are very much reduced. They are:—

- (1) The infinitive.
- (2) A fully conjugated present tense, used in perfective verbs as the future.
- (3) A past tense consisting of an old participle in -ль, with the personal pronouns, the copula, as usual in Russian, being omitted.
- (4) An imperative formed directly from the present tense.
- (5) A present “gerundive”\* active in -я, and present participle in -ущій or -ящій.
- (6) A past participle active in -вшій, and a past gerundive\* in -въ or -вшій.

These last-named forms are comparable with the predicatives and determinatives of the comparative, and originate in the same way. In older Russian ши was a feminine suffix of certain adjectives.

(7) A present participle passive in -емый, and

(8) A past participle passive in -тый or -ный.

The participles are all fully declined like ordinary adjectives.

(9) A verbal noun in -нiе.

The functions of these parts are more fully discussed in the Syntax, § 88 and 89.

---

\* This so-called “gerundive” is merely an indeclinable participle, only used in agreement with the subject of the sentence.

*The Deficiencies and the "Aspects" (ВІДЫ).*

(ii) Thus in Russian there is *no* conjunctive, only one conjugated tense, only one so-called past "tense" to express imperfects, preterites, perfects, pluperfects, etc. The future imperfective is formed by a compound tense, the infinitive with *бѹдѹ* one of the forms of *бЫТЬ* to be.

The obvious deficiencies are supplemented by the *aspects* of the Russian verb.

This subject cannot at present be approached; it may be briefly explained. [v. §§ 58 and 92.]

In English, "I do," "I am doing," "I was doing," "I did," "I used to do," "I *do* do," "I have done," all define the nature of the act; e.g. "I am doing" is the continuous conjugation; "I used to do" the habitual; "I have done" marks the completion or perfective aspect, and so on.

If the reader knows any Latin, and can imagine Latin reduced to one tense, but converting the other tenses into separate conjugations with new infinitives to match, he will understand what has happened in Russian. Old Russian had a far fuller complement of tenses, *imperfect*, *aorist*, *perfect*, etc. In modern Russian "aspects" replace the tenses and fulfil entirely the same object.

If Latin had evolved an infinitive *labōrābāre*, from the imperfect *labōrābam*, to express the habitual aspect, or *labōrāvire* (from *labōrāvī*) to express the completion or perfective, such separate by-forms of the verb would very nearly correspond with the Russian aspects. Such desideratives as *ēsūrīre*, from *ēsūrus*, future participle of

*ēdō* to eat, and the inceptives in *-esco*, might indeed in the parlance of Slavonic grammar be termed “aspects.”

To those who know a little Greek, the aspects will be even more familiar.

Thus the present forms *νοσεῖν* to be ill, *ἀποθνήσκω* to die, correspond to the imperfective *болѣтъ* or *хворáтъ* and *умира́тъ*; the aorist forms *ἐνόσησα*, *νοσήσαι*, *ἀποθανεῖν*, to the perfective *οβολѣтъ*, *захворáтъ*, *умерéтъ*, to be taken ill, to die. E.g. *онъ оболѣлъ*, *захворáлъ*, *ἐνόσησε*; but *онъ болѣлъ*, he was ill some time, *ἐνόσει*; *онъ умира́лъ*, he lay a-dying, *ἀπέθνησκε*.

And just as *νοσήσω*, etc., is a future, not a present, but has the aorist stem, so *захворáю*, *умрý* signify I shall fall ill, etc. E.g. *умрётъ отъ чахóтки* he will die of consumption.

### *How the Parts are Formed.*

(iii) To know every form of the Russian verb, it is only necessary to learn the infinitive and 3rd person singular present. The rest follow.

### *Verbs Original and Derivative.*

(iv) Verbs may be either original—i.e. unreferable to any simpler form—or derivative, from nouns or other verbs. E.g. in English “to fall,” “to write,” are original; “to book,” “to tabulate” derivative (from the noun “book,” and the Latin *tābula*, table). Or as in Latin, *dīcere* to say, *iūdicāre*, from *iūdex*, a judge.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



In some few guttural stems, the guttural and -ть coalesce into -чь, e.g. печь to bake, for пек-ть; жечь to burn, for жег-ть.

In some dental roots, the dental and -ть coalesce into -сть, e.g. вести to lead, for вед-ть; плести to pleat, for плет-ть.

In "original" vocalic stems -ть follows the root, e.g. зна-ть to know.

Sometimes a consonant is extruded, e.g. жить to live, for жив-ть.

All derivative stems are vocalic, e.g. желá-ть to wish.

#### § 44. THE FORMS DERIVED FROM THE RUSSIAN INFINITIVE.

The -ть termination must be removed, and the stem or root stripped.

(1) By adding -ние a verbal noun is formed; e.g. колебáть to rock, колебáние; в'ять to blow, в'яние.

(2) By adding -ль the past tense is formed; e.g. я колебáль I rocked.\*

(3) By adding -я to the present stem the present "gerundive" д'ла-ть; e.g. д'лая doing.

---

\* In consonantal stems this -ль is dropped in the masculine singular, restored in the other inflections.

E.g. тереть (root тьр) to rub, past tense тёръ, тёрла (fem.), etc.  
лечь (root лег) to lie down, past tense лёгъ, легла (fem.), etc.  
-речь (root рек) to speak, past tense рёкъ, рекла (fem.), etc.

But cf. for this last the Polish rzeł, and Āech řekl.

- (4) By adding -ущій, -ющій to the present stem the present participle; e.g. имѣющій possessing (имѣ-ть);\* -ящій is added with *derivative* verbs in -ить: пис-а-ть, пишущій.
- (5) By adding -въ or -вши the past gerundive; e.g. пис-а-ть to write, писа́въ, писа́вши,† and by adding -вшій the past participle active; e.g. веселѣ-ть to enliven, веселѣ-вшій.
- (6) By adding -емый or -имый the present participle passive; e.g. купи́-ть to buy, купи́мый; зна-ть to know, зна́емый.

An easier rule is to form this from the 1st person plural present купи́мъ, зна́емъ.

- (7) A perfect participle passive in т or н. т is only used in a very few verbs of certain types; e.g. двѣнуть to move, двѣнутый, посла́ть to send, по́сланный sent.

*This participle is accented like the 2nd person singular present of variable verbs.*

All participles are fully declined as predicatives and determinatives.

Before proceeding to learn the verbs, the student must be sure he knows the phonetic rules in §§ 2, 5, 6, 8, 9.

It will be observed that all the forms derived from the infinitive are accented like the infinitive. There are scarcely any exceptions to this rule.

---

\* In older Russian the terminations were -учи, -ячи gerundive, -учій, -ячій participle. Some of the latter survive as adjectives, e.g. могу́чій powerful (мочь), горя́чій (горѣть) hot, сидя́чій sedentary. Бѹдучи is still used as the gerundive present of быть; бѹдущій, the regular form, means "future."

† In consonantal roots the termination is -шій, e.g. нести́ to carry, нести́, не́сшій.



§ 45. THE FORMATIONS FROM THE 1ST PERSON  
SINGULAR PRESENT.

The *imperative* is formed from the 1st person singular present by substituting *й, ь* or *и* for *у* or *ю*.

The addition of *-те* makes this imperative form plural.

The same *-те* added to the 1st person plural makes a *hortative* mood "let us do."

The accentuation is that of the present tense.

e.g. *бѹду* I shall be, *бѹдь*, *бѹдѹте*, *бѹдем-те*  
*веселѹю* I enliven, *веселѹи*, *веселѹйте*

There are a very few exceptions to this general rule, viz. *бить* to beat [v. § 52 (2) β], *дать* to give [v. § 57, III.], *стоять* to stand [v. § 52 (3)], *боятся* to fear [v. § 52 (3)], *смѣяться* to laugh [v. § 52 (3)], *крыть\** to cover [v. § 52 (2) ε].

e.g. *внѣмлю* I take, *внѣмлюи*      *бѹю* I beat, *бѹи*  
*бою* I fear, *бой-ся*                      *моюсь* I wash, *мой-ся*

§ 46. THE ACCENTUATION OF THE VERB.

I. All the forms derived from the infinitive [v. § 44] have a fixed accent, that of the infinitive.

II. Except in a very few verbs the imperative has the accent of the 1st person singular present.

III. Verbs which uniformly accent the termination or the stem in every part are said to have a fixed

---

\* The exception in verbs in *-ыть* is apparent only: if the *ы* be taken as a contraction of *-оѣ* or *у*, i.e. as equivalent to *-моѣть*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

ска́зать to tell (rule VI.).

скажѹ́	ска́жемъ
ска́жешь	ска́жете
ска́жетъ	ска́жутъ

не́сти to carry (invariable) (rule VI.).

несу́	несѐмъ
несѐшь	несѐте [v. § 9 (7) (1)]
несѐтъ	несу́тъ

§ 47. EXAMPLES OF THE COMPLETE CONJUGATION OF TWO DERIVATIVE VERBS WITH FIXED ACCENTS.

<i>Infinitive :</i>	желá-ть to wish	вѣри-ть to believe
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	желáние	[вѣреніе]*
<i>Present gerundive :</i>	желáя	вѣря
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	желáющій	вѣрящій
<i>Past gerundive act. :</i>	желáвъ, желáвши	вѣривъ, вѣривши
<i>Past part. act. :</i>	желáвшій	вѣрившій
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	желáемый	вѣримый†
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	желáнный	-вѣренный
<i>Present :</i>	я желáю	вѣрю
	ты желáешь	вѣришь
	онъ, она́, оно́ желáетъ	вѣритъ
	мы желáемъ	вѣримъ
	вы желáете	вѣрите
	они́, онѣ́ желáютъ	вѣрятъ
<i>Past :</i>	я, ты желáлъ, желáла	вѣрилъ, вѣрила
	онъ, она́, оно́ { желáлъ, желáла, желáло	
	{ вѣрилъ, вѣрила, вѣрило	
	мы, вы, они́, онѣ́ желáли, вѣрили	

\* Replaced by вѣрованіе, from вѣровать.

† Rare.

*Future:*    бѹду    } желáть    бѹдемъ } желáть  
              бѹдешь } вѣрить    бѹдете } вѣрить  
              бѹдетъ }                бѹдутъ } вѣрить

*Imperative:*    2nd pers. sing. желáй    вѣрь  
                          2nd pers. pl.    желáйте    вѣрьте

*Unless specially mentioned, all the parts of the Russian verb are simply and regularly formed as in these two paradigms.*

## § 48. THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

### *Some Phonetic Rules.*

Before entering on this section, reperuse § 5, § 6, § 8, § 9.

*Remember.*—Words in -ере-, -оро-, -еле-, -оло-, though now dissyllables, represent monosyllabic roots in -ре-, -ра-, -ле-, -ла-.

*Remember*—

г + е makes же    г + и makes жи    г + ю makes жу  
 And similarly with к and х (changing to ч and ш).

*Remember*—

т + ю makes in Russian чу, in Church Slavonic щу.

д + ю makes in Russian жу, in Church Slavonic жду.

т + я can make in Russian ча, and in Church Slavonic  
 ща or remain.

т + е or и can make че, чи or remain.

д + е or и can make же, жи or remain.

д + я can make жа or remain.

When the dental remains, it is due to the influence of the written language.

*Remember*—к, г + -ть are changed to -чь; but т or д + тѣ to -стѣ, and the ending -стѣ is extended to other roots by false analogy.

*Remember*—з + я becomes жа or remains.

с + я becomes ша or remains.

с + ю becomes шу

з + ю becomes жу

ст + ю becomes шу

*Remember.*—The euphonic insertion of я after labial roots before ю, and -енный.

Before other soft vowels с, з and ст as a rule are merely softened in pronunciation, not changed in quality. [v. § 5 (4).]

## § 49. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

At the head of § 42 there is printed a scheme of the four conjugations.

The first conjugation forms its present in -у, -ешь, -еть, -емъ, -ете, -уть, added directly on to the root, without any intermediate vowel.

It comprises the following classes:—

I. *Guttural Roots.*—Infinitive in -чь; e.g. печь to bake, лечь to lie down, мочь to be able.

e.g. печь to bake (root пек)      жечь to burn (root жьг)

*Past part. act.:*              пёкшій                      жёгшій

*Gerundive:*                      печá                      жёгши

*Present part. act.:*              пекúщій                      жгúщій

*Past part. pass.:*              печённый                      жжённый

*Present:*                      пекú      печёмъ              жгу      жжёмъ

                    печёшь      печёте              жжёшь      жжёте

                    печётъ      пекúть              жжётъ      жгутъ

*Past:*      пёкъ, пеклá, пеклó, пеклí; жёгъ, жглá, жглó, жглí

*Imperative:*      пекí; жги



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



The present gerundive and participle *начая* and *начающий* do not exist, as the verb is perfective and has no present tense; only the past active participles *начавъ*, *начавший*.

But note *past part. pass.* *начатый*, or *начатой*.

*Present* (with future meaning):—

начнѹ	начнѣмъ
начнѣшь	начнѣте
начнѣтъ	начнѹтъ

*Past*: *началь*, *начала*, *начало*, *начали*

*Imperative*: *начни*

*Verbs of this class take the past passive participle in т, and mostly throw the accent back on the past tense in -ль and the participle in т. Otherwise the accent is always on the termination.*

Such are:—*жать* (*жму*) to press (root *жъм*); *жать* (*жну*) to reap (root *жън*), *чать* (root *чън*); only used in compounds, e.g. *начинать* begin, *сочинять* compose; *пять* (*пну*, root *пън*), mostly used in compounds, e.g. *распять* to crucify.

*Verbs of this class take the verbal substantive in -тіе (as also do the liquid roots, v. infra).*

e.g. *распятие* the crucifixion  
*понятие* the meaning (of a passage)

There is one other such verb (with a nasal root) of great consequence, only used in compounds, viz. *-ять* (root *ем*, Latin *emere*) to take.

In compounds, as with the 3rd person pronoun [v. § 41, V. (2)], *и* is prefixed to the root.

e.g. наня́ть to hire, приня́ть асcerpt, поня́ть to understand, заня́ть to occupy (oneself) or to lend, взя́ть to take up, сня́ть to take away ; all in the imperfective, нанима́ть, принима́ть, etc. ; all having a past participle passive, наня́тъ, заня́тъ, etc.

The present restores the original root -емъ.

e.g. найму́, наймёшь, etc., пойму́, возьму́, займу́, etc.

There also exists a perfective present form in ёмлю, внёмлю, внёмлешь, conjugated like a verb with fixed accent of the third conjugation, but with an imperative accented внемли́.

### III. *Sibilant Roots.*

These are :—

нести́ to carry (root нес)  
 везти́ to drive (e.g. in a carriage) (root вез)  
 грызть to gnaw (root грыз)  
 лѣзть to climb (root лѣз)  
 ползти́ to creep (root полз)  
 пасты́ to graze (transitive) (root паст)

Example :—

*Infinitive* : везти́

*Gerundive present* : везя́

*Participle present* : везу́щій

*Gerundive past* : вѣзши

*Past participle passive* : везённый

*Verbal, derived from imperfective* : -вожéние

*Present* : везу́, везёшь, etc.

*Past* : вѣзь, везла́, -ло́, -ли́

*Imperative* : вези́

*Notice.*—лѣзть has a present лѣзу, лѣзешь, etc., лѣзуть ; imperative лѣзь,



IV. *Roots in Liquids* : -ере-, -оро-, -еле-, -оло-.

- (1) e.g. терéть to rub (root тьр, imperf. тира́ть)  
 -мерéть to die (root мьр, imperf. -мира́ть)  
 перéть to prop (root ньр, imperf. пира́ть)

Example :—

*Infinitive* : терéть

*Verbal* : трéние\*

*Past part. pass.* : тёртъ, like the roots in nasals

*Present gerundive act.* : трúщи

*Present part. act.* : трúщій

*Past part. act.* : тёртый

*Present* : тру, трéшь, трéть, трёмъ, трéте, трутъ

*Past* : тёръ, тёрла, -ло, -ли

Like the roots in nasals, the verbal noun and past participle passive are formed with т, and the past tense and past participle passive throw the accent back on to the particle with which they are compounded.

e.g. úмеръ, умерла́, úмерло, úмерли (умерéть)

So, too, по́дперъ (but -пёръ) to prop.

- |                      |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| (2) борóть to fight† | полóть to weed  |
| порóть to rend       | молóть to grind |
| колóть to pierce     |                 |

колóть to pierce.

*Present part. act.* : кóлющій

*Past part. act.* : колóвшій .

*Verbal noun* : колóтье

*Past part. pass.* : кóлотъ

*Present part. pass.* : кóлемый

*Present* (following the third conjugation) : колю́,  
 кóлешь, кóлетъ, кóлемъ, кóлете, кóлютъ

*Past* : колóль, колóла, колóло, колóли

\* тёртие is disused.

† Used with -ся, omitted in example,



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

Exceptions, гресть and скресть: грёбъ, гребла́, гребли́; скрёбъ, скребла́, скребли́; and расти́ (root раст), расту́, растёшь, рос -ъ, -ла́, -ло́, -ли́.

честь and идти́ follow slightly different rules.

*Present*: идú (in compounds йду, e.g. найду I shall find, etc.), идёшь, идётъ, идёмъ, идёте, идúтъ

*Past* (from root шед): шёлъ, шла́, шли́

*Participles and gerundives*: идя́, идúщій, шедши́й

честь (only used in compounds, root чьт)

*Present*: -чту, -чтёшь, -чтутъ

*Past*: -чёлъ, -чла́, -чли́

*Verbal noun*: -чтёние

*Participles and gerundives*: -чтя, -чтúщій, -чтívши́й, -чтённы́й

сѣсть has a present сяду accented uniformly like лечь, лягу. красть accents the present краду́, крадёшь, etc.

With these variations, one example will explain all these verbs.

красть to steal

*Present gerundive active*: крадя́

*Present participle active*: краду́щій

*Past participle active*: кра́дши́й

*Past participle passive*: кра́день, кра́денны́й

*Present*: краду́, -ёшь, -ётъ, -ёмъ, -ёте, -úтъ

*Imperative*: кради́

All these forms use the real root of the verb in the present forms.

*Past*: кра́ль, кра́ла, кра́ло, кра́ли

So, too, сѣ́ль, сѣ́ла, сѣ́ло, сѣ́ли

For the accentuation of the past tense in its inflections, as a rule, monosyllables derived from verbs which accent the terminations throw the accent forward.

e.g. лёгъ, легла́, легло́, легли́

паль\* (пасть) and сѣль (сѣсть) have a fixed accent, influenced by the derivative parts from verbs in -ать and -ѣть.

Forms such as вѣль, плѣль (вѣсти́, плѣсти́) throw the accent forward like лёгъ, росъ; so, too, кляль (клясти́, клянѹ́), краль (красти́).

*Except* in original verbs, mostly monosyllabic, the past tense, or rather the participle in -л, never shifts the accent.

VI. *Roots in в.* These are three in number.

· жить to live

плыть to swim

слыть to have a reputation of (Greek κλύειν)

e.g. онъ слывѣтъ мѹдрымъ he is thought wise.

One example illustrates all three.

жить to live

*Verbal noun* : житіѣ and житѣѣ

*Past participle passive* : -жи́тый

*Gerundive present active* : живѣя

*Participle present active* : живѹ́щій (but older form, used adjectivally, живѹ́чій)

*Gerundive past active* : жи́вши, живѣ

*Participle past active* : жи́вщій

*Present* : живѹ́, живѣшь . . . живѹ́тъ

*Past* : жилъ, жила́, жи́ло, жи́ли

---

\* Cf. Polish padł.

VII. *Consonantal roots with a suffixal vowel a.*

- e.g. врать to speak at random, or lie  
 лгать to lie (tell falsehoods)  
 брать to take (iterative -бирать)  
 ждать to wait (iterative -ждать)  
 рвать to tear  
 спать to sleep  
 ржать to neigh  
 драть to tear (present деру́)  
 звать to call (present зову́)

## Examples:—

	рвать to tear	драть to tear
<i>Verbal noun:</i>	рва́ние	дра́нье*
<i>Past part. pass.:</i>	рванъ	дранъ.
<i>Gerundive pres. act.:</i>	рвѧ	дерѧ
<i>Participle pres. act.:</i>	рвѹщїи	дерѹщїи
<i>Past part. act.:</i>	рва́вшїи	дра́вшїи
<i>Present:</i>	рву, рвѣшь, рвѣтъ, рвѣмъ, рвѣте, рвѹтъ	дерѹ́, дерѣшь, дерѣтъ, дерѣмъ, дерѣте, дерѹтъ
<i>Past:</i>	рвалъ, рва́ла, рва́ло, рва́ли	дралъ, дра́ла, дра́ло, дра́ли

So, too, лгать, лгу, лжѣшь, etc.

So, too, брать, беру́;  
звать, зову́

There are many similar forms in the third conjugation, monosyllabic and dissyllabic, e.g. знать to know, спать to sleep, писáть to write. [v. § 51 (3).]

\* Irregular accentuation.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



e.g. дёргать	to pull	дёрнуть
трёгать	to touch	трёгнуть
лопать	to split	лопнуть
тонить	to sink	тонуть* to drown
тягивать	to drag	тянуть* to pull
касаться	to concern	коснуться
шептать	to whisper	шепнуть

There are some exceptions to this rule of accentuation.

e.g. глядѣть	to look at	глянуть
кидѣть	to leave	кинуть
чёрпать	to take in water (of a ship)	черпнуть
зѣять	to gape	-зѣнуть
кричатѣть	to cry	крикнуть

*Note, however, compounds in глянуть have a variable accent.*

e.g. заглянуть, загляну́, заглянешь, etc.

## II. Verbs in -нуть, imperfective and intransitive.

In the past tense the simple root is used, with no suffixal vowel between the last consonant and лъ, which latter, as in the first conjugation, drops in the masculine singular.

These verbs are distinguished from ordinary imperfectives by having the special *inchoative* meaning of "becoming."

---

\* With variable accent тóнешь, тѣнешь, тѣнутый.

These verbs are nearly all accented on the penultimate.

e.g. слѣ́пнуть to become blind  
 со́хнуть to become dry  
 ча́хнуть to die gradually, or wither  
 сты́нуть to cool  
 гѣ́бнуть (гѣ́бать) to decay  
 тѣ́хнуть to become quiet

In this class a few verbs have the past tense in -нуль.

e.g. лѣ́пнуть to adhere, лѣ́пнуль; -снуть (mostly used in compounds, e.g. засну́ть, просну́ть) to sleep, -снуль (as the perfective of засыпа́ть, etc.)

The present runs -снү, -снёшь . . . снутъ.\*

### III. Examples of conjugation in both varieties.

	Perfective and Transitive.	Imperf. and Intrans:
	кѣ́нуть to cast off	гѣ́бнуть to decay
<i>Infinitive :</i>	кѣ́нуть	гѣ́бнуть
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	(кѣ́нүте)	none
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	кѣ́нүтый (in т not н)	none
<i>Present part. act. :</i>	none	гѣ́бнүщій
<i>Present gerundive act. :</i>	none	гѣ́бнүщи
<i>Past gerundive act. :</i>	кѣ́нүвши	гѣ́бнүвши
<i>Past part. act. :</i>	кѣ́нүвшій	гѣ́бнүвшій
<i>Present part. pass. :</i>	none	none
<i>Present :</i>	кѣ́нү, кѣ́нешь, кѣ́нетъ, кѣ́немъ, кѣ́нете, кѣ́нутъ	гѣ́бнү, гѣ́бнешь, гѣ́бнетъ, гѣ́бнемъ, гѣ́бнете, гѣ́бнутъ
<i>Past :</i>	кѣ́нуль, кѣ́нула, кѣ́нуло, кѣ́нули	гѣ́бъ, гѣ́бла гѣ́бло, гѣ́бли
<i>Imperative :</i>	кѣ́нь	гѣ́бъ

\* Cf. the noun сонъ, сна.



## § 51. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Preliminary.*

The characteristic of this conjugation is the present in -ю, -ешь, -еть, -емъ, -ете, -ютъ.

This conjugation comprises a number of primary original verbs, mostly monosyllables, and vocalic roots (thereby distinct from those in the first conjugation); a few consonantal roots also exist.

It comprises the enormous and increasing number of regular derivatives in -ѣть; the derivative verbs in -ать and -ять, which, is the commonest form, and the large class of verbs in -овать, -евать, together with the iteratives in -ывать, -ивать.

Thus, this conjugation perhaps embraces the majority of Russian verbs.

An example of a simple regular verb in -ать is to be found at § 47.

Verbs in -ѣть are precisely the same, e.g. зеленѣть to become green, the stem зеленѣ- being substituted for the stem желá-.

## § 52. THE ORIGINAL VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. Those in which the terminations are directly affixed to the root.

(1) *Liquid roots in -олоть, -ороть.*

These have been explained in § 49, IV. (?).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

There are very few original verbs of this type; they are all regularly conjugated like the derivatives in -ѣть, or like желáю [v. § 47], substituting the root in ѣ for желá-.

They are all accented throughout on the root-vowel ѣ; e.g. смѣю, грѣетъ, успѣлъ. For -дѣть dress, v. § 57, II.

For пѣть, v. following sub-section (ε).

(ε) Verbs in -ыть.

[For бѣть to be, v. § 57, II. This verb is anomalous, forming its parts—as in nearly all Indo-European languages—out of several separate roots.]

e.g. крѣть to cover, мыть to wash, выть to howl, рыть to dig; ныть to be injured, and пѣть to sing, which accents the termination; пою, поёшь, поётъ, поёмъ, поёте, пою́тъ.

ы fully accented is sounded almost as a diphthong *ii*, and крѣть may be taken as an abbreviated form of крѣеть. One example will illustrate them all.

*Infinitive* : крѣть

*Verbal noun* : крѣ́тiе\*

*Past participle pass.* : крѣтъ\*

*Past participle act.* : крѣ́вшій

*Past gerundive act.* : крѣвъ, крѣ́вши

*Past* : крѣ́лъ, крѣ́ла, крѣ́ло, крѣ́ли

*Present* : крѣ́ю, крѣ́ешь, крѣ́еть, крѣ́емъ, крѣ́ете, крѣ́ють

*Present participle pass.* : крѣ́емый

*Imperative* : крѣ́й, крѣ́йте

---

\* From §§ 49 I., II., IV., VI., § 50, § 52, I. (2) (β) (γ) (ε), it will be seen that most of the primitive root-verbs, consonantal and vocalic, have the past participle passive in т and not in н.

II. Verbs with an infinitive in -ать, -ять; but affixing the root directly on to the terminations of the present tense.

Of these verbs there is an immense number. Some instances can be given. Otherwise they are conjugated like *желаю* or *дѣлаю*.

		Present.	Accentuation.
та́ять	to thaw	та́ю	fixed
ла́ять	to bark	ла́ю	..
ка́пать	to trickle	ка́плю (ка́паю)	
ма́зать	to anoint	ма́жу	
рѣ́зать	to cut	рѣ́жу	
чу́ять	to hear	чу́ю	
пря́тать	to hide	пря́чу	
вѣ́ять	to wave	вѣ́ю	
ора́ть	to plough	ору́ю	
надѣ́яться	to hope	надѣ́юсь	
пла́кать	to weep	пла́чу	..
дви́гать	to move	дви́жу (дви́гаю)	„
писа́ть	to write	пишú, but пишешь, пи́шуть, and пи́санный	variable
смѣ́яться	to laugh	смѣ́юсь	invariable
вяза́ть	to bind	вяза́ю	variable
дрема́ть	to sleep	дремлю́ю	..
шепта́ть	to whisper	шепчу́ю	
сказа́ть	to say	скажу́ю	
лепета́ть	to stammer	лепечу́ю	„

Nearly all the verbs of this class accented on the last syllable have a shifting accent, like that of *писа́ть*.

*Notice.*—(1) *стена́ть*, to groan, has mixed forms: *стена́ю*, *стена́ешь*, etc., or *стону́ю*, *сто́нешь*, etc.; past *стена́ль* or *стону́ль*.

- (2) колебáть to rock, колебáю or колебáю, колеблешь or колебáешь, etc.
- (3) слать to send, шлю, шлешь, шлётъ, шлёте, шлють (imperfective -сылáть).
- (4) стлать to spread, стелю, стелешь, etc., стелютъ; past стлалъ, стлалá, стлáло, стлáли.
- (5) дыхáть to breathe, дышú, дышешь, дышутъ or дыхáю, дыхáешь, etc., in compounds.
- (6) страдáть to suffer, стражду or страдаю in the 1st person; otherwise страдаю, страдаешь, etc. стражду is a Church Slavonic form, the true Russian would have been стражу.

### § 53. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### *The Derivative Verbs.*

There are three forms of derivatives in the third conjugation:—

(1) With the infinitive in -ать or -ять, and stem in -а-, -я-, mostly derived from nouns, and conserving fixedly the accent of the noun. These are mostly transitive.

e.g. дѣло thing	дѣлать to do
рабóта work	рабóтать to work
печáть printing	печáтать to print
любéзникъ courtier	любéзничать to court

There are *very* few exceptions to this rule of the uniformity of accentuation of noun and verb.

e.g. хвóрый ill	хворáть to be ill
лáска affection	ласкáть to dandle

(2) With the infinitive in -ѣть *accented*, intransitive, and with an inceptive and imperfective meaning.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read  
for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



*The accent on these derivatives is fixed, mostly, on the syllable accented in the noun or adjective from which they are derived. But in the present, and those forms derived from it, -ов, -ев changes to -у, which is accented, when the infinitive is oxytone.*

e.g. вѣра, вѣровать to believe  
 жѣртва, жѣртву, жѣртовать to sacrifice  
 бесѣда, бесѣдовать to converse  
 вѣрварь, вѣрварствовать to be barbarous  
 существо́ a "being," существова́ть to exist  
 вой-на́, воева́ть to war

The foreign loan-words in -ировать. These if quadrisyllabic accent ирова́ть; if pentasyllabic, or beyond, и́ровать.

e.g. акклиматизи́ровать to acclimatize  
 [*but* характеризирова́ть to characterize]  
 аплоди́ровать to applaud  
 цивилизи́ровать to civilize, etc.

*But notice*—здорово́ый healthy, здорова́ться; здорова́юсь to greet. This is really a derivative from the adjective. [v. § 53 (1).]

II. There are a few *original* verbs in -овать, -евать, which really belong to § 52; but, as they are exactly like the derivatives, may be more conveniently treated here.

They all accent in the same way:—

e.g. рова́ть	to forge	ку́ю, куёшь	fixed accent
основа́ть	to found	осну́ю, оснуёшь	„ „
сова́ть	to thrust	су́ю	„
клева́ть	to nibble	кля́ю	
жева́ть	to chew	жу́ю	

(4) *Iteratives in -ать, -ять.*

There is one aspect of the Russian called iterative or frequentative, signifying habitual or repeated action.

One form of this is an inflection in -ать, -ять, -аю, -яю.

e.g. двѣгать to move, perfective двѣжу [v. § 52 (3)]

двигать to move, iterative двигáю

начать to begin, perfective начнѹ [v. § 49 (2)]

начинать to begin, imperfective

Other examples will be given in the section on the aspects. [v. § 59 (4).]

The conjugation is regular, like желáю [v. § 47].

(5) *Iteratives in -ывать, -ивать.*

(a) Where the root of the verb is vocalic, in -вать.

e.g. дать	to give	давáть
быть	to be	бывáть
стать	to become	-ставáть
обуться	to be shod (perf.)	обувáться

(β) Where the verb is dissyllabic, or the root consonantal in -ывать, -ивать, *with the accent on the root.*

e.g. писáть	to write	пѣсывáть
звáть	to call	зóвывать [v. § 49, VII.] and -зывáть
торговáть	to trade	торгóвывать
игрáть	to play	ѣгрывать
ходѣть	to go	хáживать
говорѣть	to speak	говáривать

For other instances, v. § 59, I. (4).

These forms are conjugated regularly with a fixed accent; e.g. бывáю, пѣсывáю, говáривáю, like желáть [v. § 47].



*Observe.*—дава́ть (from дать) forms its present like кова́ть [v. § 53 (3) II.], даю́, даёшь, даётъ, etc. Similarly -става́ть has -стаю́, -стаёшь, etc., and -знава́ть (from знать to know), -знаю́, -знаёшь, etc.

## § 54. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

### *Preliminary.*

The fourth conjugation consists mainly of derivative verbs with fixed accentuation.

The infinitive is in -ѣть for a few very common original verbs, and in -ать, -ять in four others: гна́ть to drive, сна́ть to sleep, сто́ять to be worth (connected with ста́ть to stand), and бо́яться to fear.

Otherwise the infinitive is in -ить, and the present terminations -ю, -ишь, -ить, -имъ, -ите, -ять are added *directly* to the root or stem, the thematic vowel и only occurring in the infinitive and forms thence derived. For a complete paradigm of the derivative verb, v. § 47, вѣ́рить, and cf. §§ 44 and 45.

The derivative verbs of the fourth conjugation are mostly transitive, and often causative.

e.g. сла́бъ weak, сла́бѣть to become weak, сла́бить to make weak

ста́ръ old, ста́рѣть to become old, ста́рить to make old

бога́тъ rich, бога́тѣть to become rich, бога́тить to enrich

ле́дяно́й (from ле́дь ice), ле́денѣть to freeze (intransitive), ле́денить to freeze (transitive)

When derived from verbs, forms in -пть are usually



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## II. Verbs in -ѢТЬ.

*Roots terminating in ш, ж, ч change Ѣ to а ; e.g. лежа́ть. Cf. § 37 and § 53 (2), and § 2 (3).*

These verbs mostly have a fixed accent on the terminations.

e.g. горѣ́ть to burn, горю́, гори́шь . . . горя́ть  
 шумѣ́ть to be noisy, шумлю́, шуми́шь, шумя́ть  
 летѣ́ть to fly, лечу́, лети́шь, лета́ть  
 сидѣ́ть\* to sit, сижу́, сиди́шь, сидя́ть  
 дрожа́ть to tremble, дрожу́, дрожи́шь, дрожа́ть  
 крича́ть to cry, кричу́, кричи́шь, крича́ть  
 лежа́ть to lie, лежу́, лежи́шь, лежа́ть\*  
 стуча́ть to knock, стучу́, стуча́ть  
 молча́ть\* to be silent, молчу́, молча́ть  
 бола́ть (impersonal), боли́ть, боля́ть  
 велѣ́ть† to command, велю́, вели́шь  
 гляде́ть\* to look at, гляжу́, гляжи́шь, etc.

Some have a moveable accent.

e.g. смотре́ть to look at, смотрю́, смóтришь . . .  
 смóтятся, смотре́ющийся, -смотре́нный  
 терпе́ть to endure, терплю́, те́рпишь . . . те́рпятъ  
 (but терпи́мый, те́рпленный)  
 держа́ть to hold, держу́, де́ржишь . . . де́ржатъ  
 (past part. pass. де́ржаный)

---

\* Present gerundive сидя, лёжа, молча, глядя.

† Takes the dative.

дыша́ть to breathe, дышу́, дышишь, дышатъ  
(Also a secondary form, дыха́ть, дышу́, дышешь,  
дышутъ in the third conjugation)

люби́ть to love, люблю́, любишь . . . любя́тъ,  
любя́щій, люби́мый

верту́ть, to turn, usually has a fixed accent on the  
termination ; ве́ртишь, ве́ртить, ве́ртятъ are also found.

виси́ть to hang (intransitive) has a fixed accent ;  
but in compounds accents the root, e.g. зави́сьтъ.

A few are accented fixedly on the root.

e.g. слы́шать, слышу́, слышатъ, etc., to hear  
ви́дѣть, вижу́, видя́тъ to see

*As a rough guide* it may be stated that verbs of the  
fourth conjugation with the infinitive in -ѣть, if in-  
transitive have a fixed accent, if transitive have a  
moveable accent.

*Note.*—плати́ть, to pay (плачу́, платишь, платя́тъ,  
пла́ченвый), must be distinguished from пла́кать, пла́чу  
to weep ; платишь . . . платя́тъ, to pay, is sometimes  
written, and commonly sounded плоти́шь . . . плоти́тъ.

The past tense of this conjugation ends in -ѣлъ,  
-а́лъ, accented like the infinitive.

In this class the irregular verbs хотѣ́ть to wish, and  
бѣжа́ть to run, must be included. бѣжа́тъ has two  
irregular forms, бѣгу́ I run, бѣгу́тъ they run, and  
derivative forms. смотре́ть, to look, is also given in full,  
to illustrate a verb of the fourth conjugation with a  
moveable accent.

<i>Infinitive</i> :	ХОТѢТЬ	СМОТРѢТЬ	БѢЖАТЬ
<i>Past</i> :	ХОТѢЛЪ	СМОТРѢЛЪ	БѢЖАЛЪ
<i>Past gerun.</i> :	ХОТѢВЪ, ХОТѢВШИ	СМОТРѢВЪ СМОТРѢВШИ	БѢЖАВЪ БѢЖАВШИ
<i>Pres. gerun.</i> :	ХОТЯ [not used]	СМОТРА	БѢЖА
<i>Pres. part. act.</i> :	ХОТЯЩІЙ	СМОТРАЩІЙ	БѢГУЩІЙ
<i>Past part. act.</i> :	ХОТѢВШІЙ	СМОТРѢВШІЙ	БѢЖАВШІЙ
<i>Past pt. pass.</i> :	—	[о]СМОТРѢННЫЙ	—
<i>Present</i> :	я ХОЧУ	СМОТРЮ	БѢГУ
	ты ХОЧЕШЬ	СМОТРИШЬ	БѢЖИШЬ
	она, онъ ХОЧЕТЬ	СМОТРИТЬ	БѢЖИТЬ
	мы ХОТИМЪ	СМОТРИМЪ	БѢЖИМЪ
	вы ХОТИТЕ	СМОТРИТЕ	БѢЖИТЕ
	они, онѢ ХОТЯТЪ	СМОТРЯТЪ	БѢГУТЪ
<i>Pres. pt. pass.</i> :	ХОТИМЫЙ	—	—
<i>Imperative</i> :	ХОТИ	СМОТРИ	БѢГИ

Most dissyllabic original verbs in -ить have a variable accent, e.g. учить to learn, учу́, учишь; пустить to let go, пу́щу, пу́стишь; the 1st person singular only is accented like the infinitive, e.g. пу́стятъ, слúжатъ (they serve). The present gerundive active, present participle active, and present participle passive are generally accented like the infinitive, e.g. любя́, любя́щій, любі́мый (любі́ть to love).

The past participle passive is generally accented like the secondary accent of the present, e.g. хвата́ть to seize, хвачу́, хва́тишь, хва́ченный.

Some verbs have a fixed accent, e.g. прости́ть to forgive, прощу́, прости́шь, прощённый, etc.; but such are mostly derivative, e.g. даръ gift, дари́ть to present, диво́ marvel, удиви́тся to marvel.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



*Trisyllabic* :—

ГОТОВЫЙ ready	ГОТОВИТЬ to make ready (past part. pass. ГОТОВЛЕННЫЙ)
ЭКОНОМЪ economical	ЭКОНОМИТЬ to economize (trans. and intrans.)

To this last principle that trisyllabic verbs retain the original accent there are many exceptions, especially in all adjectives and nouns denoting substance.

e.g. БОГАТЫЙ rich	БОГАТИТЬ to enrich
ВЕСЕЛЫЙ merry	ВЕСЕЛИТЬ enliven
ЗЕЛЁНЫЙ green	ЗЕЛЕНИТЬ to make green
ЗОЛОТО gold	ЗОЛОТИТЬ to gild (ЗОЛОЧЁННЫЙ)
ЛЁДЬ ice, icy	ЛЕДЕНИТЬ to freeze
ГОВОРЬ speech	ГОВОРИТЬ to say

### § 57. ANOMALOUS VERBS.

A few anomalous verbs remain over for discussion. They are *either* of mixed conjugations or obsolete forms.

#### I. *Mixed conjugations.*

(1) The same root throughout.

(a) РЕВѢТЬ, to roar, forms its present like a verb of the first conjugation, e.g. реву, ревѣшь . . . ревѣтъ, and therefore all derivative forms such as реву́щий, ревя́ (gerundive), etc.

(β) ХОТѢТЬ to wish [v. § 55, II.].

(γ) -ДѢТЬ (only used in compounds, одѣть to dress, etc.) and СТАТЬ, to stand, form their present in дѣну, дѣнешь; стáну, стáнешь; and belong to the first conjugation.

- (δ) посѣтѣть to visit, обратѣть to direct, from the 1st person present in щ instead of ч; thus, посѣщѹ, посѣтѣшь; обращѹ, обратѣшь.
- (ε) -шибѣть (only used in compounds, e.g. ошибѣться make a mistake, perfective; imperfective ошибáться, ошибáюсь, etc.) forms its present as in the first conjugation, its past as in the intransitives of the second, e.g. ошибѹсь, ошибѣтся . . . ошибѹтся; past оши́бся, оши́блась, оши́блось, оши́блись. The participles are ошибáющійся, оши́бшійся; gerundives, ошибáясь, оши́бшись.
- (ζ) Distinguish зрѣть, зрю, зрять [зрѣнный] to look at; and зрѣть to ripen, зрѣю, зрѣешь, etc.

## II. Using different roots.

E.g. in English "to be," "I was," "to go," "I went."

(1) и́дти forms its present from the root ид, its past from шед. e.g.

*Present* : идѹ, идѣшь . . . идѹтъ

*Present part. and gerundive* : идѹщій, идя́

*Past* : шѣлъ, шла, шло, шли

*Past part. act. and gerundive* : шедшій, шедши

(2) быть to be

*Verbal noun* : бытіе

*Present* : есть; суть

*Past* : былъ, была́, было, были

*Future* : бѹду, бѹдешь, бѹдетъ, бѹдемъ, бѹдете, бѹдѹтъ

*Future participle* : бѹдущій. But v. § 44 (4), footnote.

*Past participle* : бывшій

*Past gerundive* : бывши or бывъ

*Imperative* : будь, бѹдьте



(3) Ёхать, to drive, has as its present form ёду, ёдешь, ёдеть, ёдемь, ёдете, ёдутъ, and thence the gerundive ёдучи, the participle ёдушій, the imperative Ёзжай or Ёзди; but in the past ёхалъ, ёхавъ, etc.; Ёзжать (iterative).

The present tense of быть is scarcely ever used. есть and суть only survive in definitions, and are then used for all the persons. E.g. Богъ есть истина God is the truth; otherwise, Пётръ очень мудръ Peter is very wise, ёто моё а то твоё this is mine and that is yours. [v. § 86.]

The compounds of быть are peculiar. The future tense is -буду, e.g. забыть to forget, забуду

пробыть to stay (perfective), пробывать (imperfective)

избыть, избывать to lose or squander

выбыть, выбывать to retire, resign

добыть, добывать to earn

перебыть, перебивать to frequent

прибыть, прибывать to arrive or increase; прибыль (fem.) profit

отбыть, отбивать to depart or get rid of

убыть, убывать to decrease

### III. *Obsolete forms.*

(1) здать, to build, has a reduplicated present зижду, зиждешь, зиждеть, зиждемь, зиждете, зиждутъ; and thence зиждушій, зиждуши; and the imperative зиди (зидь). For the rest it is like знаю.

(2) There are four verbs in "m," like the Latin *sum* and the Greek verbs in *μι*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## § 58. THE ASPECTS OF THE VERBS.

*Preliminary.*

In § 42 (2) (ii) the “aspects” of the Russian verb were mentioned. They could not be adequately explained until the accidence of the verb had been fully treated.

To recapitulate: the verb in early Russian had a present, imperfect and aorist (or preterite) indicative, and a compounded perfect and pluperfect like the English “I have read,” and the Latin *gavisus sum*. There were some few traces even of a future, but no conjunctive or other moods.

Russian discarded all the inflections save that of the present, and modified the stem or root to express the same tenses; e.g. я сви́стѣлъ I whistled, is “j'ai sifflé”; я сви́стнулъ is “je siffelai”; я сви́стѣлъ is “je sifflais,” I was whistling; я сви́стывалъ I used to whistle (now and then).

Each of these “aspects” has its conjugation; and, thus, those Russian verbs which have all the aspects possess nearly the same richness as the Greek verb with its present infinitive and participle, aorist forms, perfect forms, etc.

The perfective regards the action accomplished or to be accomplished, not the process of doing it.

e.g. Учи́тъ-ли вашъ ма́льчикъ свои́ уро́ки ?

Does your boy learn his lessons (as a rule) ?

Нѣтъ, но онъ ихъ выучитъ сегодня is the perfective; there can be no present to an aorist or preterite. The present form is used as a perfect contemplating the completion of the act. The answer is: "No, but he will learn them to-day."

The answer might proceed: и такъ будетъ ходить въ школу съ понедѣльника (i.e. the imperfective future) "and so will go to school from Monday next." Or again, я буду стоять ежедневно на одномъ и томъ же мѣстѣ I shall stand every day at the same spot. Стану can also be used as the auxiliary, but signifies rather "I will begin to."

e.g. Въ будущемъ году ты станешь работать въ конторѣ.

Next year you will start working at the office.

The primary division, which very nearly all Russian verbs have, is into imperfective and perfective. Some have further forms, derived from either or both in certain cases, from the imperfective.

The *abstract*, e.g. рыба плаваетъ быстро the fish swims quickly (as a habit), этотъ пловецъ плывётъ очень хорошо this swimmer is swimming very well (at this instant).

The *inceptive*, e.g. болѣть to fall ill, заболѣть to fall ill gradually. The *iterative* or *habitual*, only used colloquially and in the past tense; e.g. Ходите-ли вы часто въ театрѣ? Нѣтъ, теперь не хожу, но когда-то хаживалъ. Do you often go to the theatre? No, I don't now; once I used to go occasionally. From the perfective the perfective form in -нуть [v. § 50, I.] has been

in some verbs specialized into the "instantaneous" or "semelfactive" aspect, an act done on a single occasion.

e.g. **Запрещено́ стуча́ть въ окно́.**

It is forbidden to knock at the window.

(Imperfective or iterative: стуча́ть, стучу́.)

**Кто э́то тамъ стучи́тъ въ дверь?**

Who is that knocking at the door?

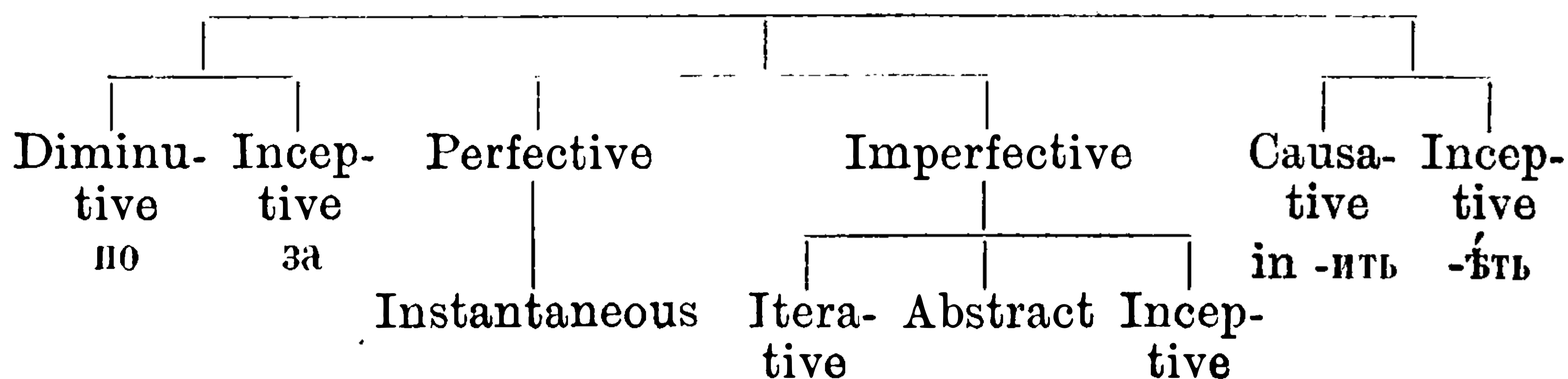
**Я не могъ войти́, такъ стукну́ль.**

I could not get in, so I knocked.

Further, certain verbs derived from adjectives have causative and inceptive forms in -ить and -ѣть [v. § 53].

		Intrans.	Trans.	
e.g.	зелёный green	зеленѣ́тъ	зелени́тъ	
	сла́бый weak	слабѣ́тъ	сла́битъ	etc.

### *Aspects.*



Some verbs have no perfective. [v. § 59, IV.]

e.g. **предви́дѣтъ** to foresee

**зави́сѣтъ** to depend

**содержа́тъ (содѣржитъ)** to contain

**принадлежа́тъ (-жу́, -жи́тъ)** to belong

**подлежа́тъ** to be subject to

**сожала́тъ (-ѣю)** to regret

**предсто́ять (-стою́)** to impend

**сочу́вствовать** to sympathize

**предчу́вствовать** to forebode



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



But these verbs, *when uncompounded*, form iteratives out of the full root with an -а́ть suffix.

e.g.	слать	to send	-сыла́ть
	брать	to take	-бира́ть
	ждать	to wait	-жидáть
	драть	to tear	-дирáть
	звать	to call	-зывáть
	жечь	to burn	-жигáть
	терéть	to rub	-тирáть
	жать	to press	-жимáть
	жать	to reap	-жинáть
	ѣсть	to eat	-ѣдáть
	[вѣсть]	to know	вѣдáть

*Similarly* in the third conjugation, in the *vocalic* stems.

e.g.	бить	to beat	бивáть
	дуть	to blow	дувáть
	знать	to know	знавáть, etc.

In the last-named verb a distinction must be made between -зна́ю, -зна́ешь, etc. (from -зна́ть), and -знаю́, -знаёшь, etc. (from -знавáть). [v. § 53 (5).]

When these primitive verbs are compounded, the imperfective takes the derivative form in -а́ть, and the perfective the original form in -ть, -чь.

e.g.	сжéчь	to burn down,	сожгú́	I shall burn down,
	сжигáть	(imperfective),	сжигáю	I am burning
		down		
	помóчь	to help,	помогú́	I shall help ;
		(imperfective)		помогáть

Similarly призна́ть to recognise, призна́ю I shall recognise ; but imperfective признавáть, признаю́ I recognise.

	забывáть (imperf.)	забывáю I forget
<i>but</i>	забы́ть (perf.)	забу́ду I shall forget
	разсѣвáть (imperf.)	разсѣвáю I disperse
	разсѣ́ять (perf.)	разсѣ́ю I shall disperse
	умира́ть (imperf.)	умира́ю I am dying
	умерѣ́ть (perf.)	умрѣ́ю I shall die
	понима́ть (imperf.)	понима́ю I understand
	пони́ять (perf.)	поймѣ́ю I shall understand
		[v. § 49, II.]
	возставáть (imperf.)	возста́ю I rise
	возста́ть (perf.)	возста́ну I shall rise
	выно́сить (imperf.)	вы́нести to carry away (perf.)

*Observe.*—прочѣсть, прочита́ть to read through (perfective); прочи́тывать (imperfective).

## (2) Second conjugation in -нуть.

These verbs, as has been explained, are all either perfective or imperfective in themselves.

e.g. угáснуть to be extinguished (imperf.), past tense угáсь; засóхнуть to dry, засóхъ; ки́нуть to throw, imperf. кидáть, past tense кинѣть.

Perfectives in -нуть are often called “instantaneous” or “semelfactive,” because they denote a single action.

e.g. крича́ть to shout, кри́кнуть to shout on one occasion

дерза́ть, дерзнѣть to venture

## (3) Third conjugation.

The manner in which the original verbs of this conjugation form their perfectives has been stated in § 59, I. (1).



Derivative verbs in -ѣть are “inceptive” in meaning, e.g. зеленѣть, viridescō, to become green, and naturally imperfective. They must be compounded with a preposition to make them perfective.

Derivative verbs in -ать, -ять are naturally imperfective, and compounded with various prepositions become perfective, e.g. дѣлать to do, сдѣлать.

Most original verbs in -ать, such as писать to write, can only form their perfective by means of a preposition, as such verbs cannot vary their form any further, or make use of a suffixal stem, e.g. писать, perfective написать.

Thus напишѹ means “I shall write.”

To the third conjugation belong the *iteratives* in -ать and -ывать. The former are always accented on the termination, the latter always on the root which is in its fullest form.

e.g. -чсть, -чту: читать to read (imperfective),  
прочтѣть (perfective), чѣтываю (iterative)  
I read here and there.

звать to call (perfective in compounds only),  
e.g. созвѣть to call together (iterative созывѣть).

Verbs whose radical vowel is o change the o to a in forming the iterative.

e.g. ломѣть to break лѣмывать  
бросѣть to throw брѣсывать  
(abstract sense: бросить concrete)

and even усвоѣть to appropriate усвѣивать



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g.	лишѣть	deprive	лишѣть
	пустѣть	permit	пускѣть
	ступѣть	tread	ступѣть
	хватѣть	seize	хватѣть
	купѣть	buy	покупѣть (distinguish купѣть to bathe)
	родѣться	be born	раждѣться*
	наслаждѣться	enjoy	наслаждѣться*
	посѣтѣть	visit	посѣщѣть*
	убѣдѣть	to convince	убѣждѣть*

## Imperfective.

*Abstract or habitual.**Concrete meaning.*

e.g.	летѣть	fly	лѣтъ [v. § 58]
	плѣвать	swim	плѣть
	бѣгать	run	бѣжѣть ( <i>but</i> бѣгѣть iterative)
	сажѣть	plant	садѣть
	ломѣть	break	ломѣть
Similarly	носѣть	carry	несѣть
	водѣть	lead	вестѣть
	возѣть	bear	везѣть
	лѣзѣть	climb	лѣзѣть
	блистѣть	gleam	блестѣть
	гонѣть	drive	гнѣть

When these verbs are compounded, the derivative form in -ать, -ять is imperfective, the original form perfective.

e.g.	отплывѣть	отплѣть	to swim away
	убѣгѣть	убѣжѣть	to run away

---

\* Church Slav change of л to жд, and т to щ.

e.g. Я лома́ю карандаши́.

I (generally) break pencils.

Медвѣ́дь ло́мится въ дверь.

The bear is breaking into the door.

Кора́бль отплыва́етъ.

The ship is leaving port.

Лодка́ уже́ отплыла́ отъ бере́га.

The boat has left the shore.

Нѣ́мцы уо́бѣга́ютъ отъ штыка́.

Germans run away from the bayonet.

Соба́ка схвати́ла кость и уо́бѣжа́ла.

The dog snatched the bone and ran away.

Нѣ́мцы пришлі́ во Францію́ съ тѣ́мъ что́бы гра́бить.

The Germans came into France to plunder.

Нѣ́мцы пришлі́ въ Бельгію́ и огра́били всѣ́ города́.

The Germans came into Belgium and plundered all the cities.

Thirdly, the alternative form in -ать, -ять may be iterative.

	Imperfective.		Iterative.
e.g.	храні́ть	keep	храня́ть
	ви́дѣть	see	вида́ть
	уда́рить	strike	ударя́ть

In compound verbs the form in -а́ть, -я́ть is used for imperfectives, the form in -и́ть for perfectives.

e.g. Отвѣ́чу I shall answer.

Отвѣ́чаю I am answering.

Разорю́ ва́ши города́ и селе́нія.

I will destroy your cities and settlements.

Въ продолже́ніе двухъ мѣ́сяцевъ коро́ль разоря́лъ непри́ятельскіе города́.

For two months the king had been destroying the hostile cities.

Generally the iteratives are formed in -ивать or -ывать, verbs in -ѣть taking -ывать.

e.g.	говори́ть	speak	говари́вать
	проси́ть	ask	пра́шивать
	ходи́ть	go	ха́живать
	глядѣ́ть	look at	глядыва́ть
	ви́дѣть	see	ви́дывать

## II. *The formation of the perfective in derivative verbs.*

As has been stated, derivative verbs end in -ѣть, -ать and -ить.

Most verbs in -ѣть are inceptive and naturally imperfective, and generally, if uncompounded, have no perfective.

e.g. слабе́ть to become weak

Verbs in -ать form the perfective by compounding, and this rule applies to original verbs like писа́ть, пишу́, пи́шетъ, as well as to derivatives, such as жела́ть, пожела́ть.

As to the choice of preposition, there is no general rule; на, разъ, по, о, у, вы, съ, etc., can all be used. Only practice can distinguish the perfectives from the compounds.

			Perfective.
e.g.	дѣ́лать	to do	сдѣ́лать
	жела́ть	to wish	позела́ть
	владѣ́ть	to rule	овладѣ́ть
	смотре́ть	to look	посмотрѣ́ть
	ви́дѣть	to see	увидѣ́ть
	писа́ть	to write	написа́ть
	тра́тить	to lose	истра́тить

Verbs in -ить mostly have a secondary form -ять, which in the uncompounded verb has an iterative



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read  
for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



IV. *The aspects of compound verbs.*

The general rule is that all compound verbs are perfective. The imperfective is formed by the iterative form in -áть, -я́ть, -ыва́ть, -ива́ть; if a derivative form exists in -ить this serves as the imperfective, and the iterative in -áть, -я́ть, -ыва́ть conserves the iterative meaning.

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g.	вы́нести	to carry out	выно́сить
	выно́сить	to endure	выно́шивать
	объ́хать	to drive round	объ́зжа́ть
	вы́везти	to cart out	выво́зить
<i>but</i>	выво́дить	to lead about	выва́живать
	выво́зить	to take about (in a carriage)	выва́живать
	вы́звать	to summon	вызыва́ть
	вы́играть	to gain at play	выи́грывать

*Observe.*—вы takes the accent, except in the imperfective, which retains the accent of the uncompounded verb. All other prepositions are unaccented, except in the past tenses and past participles passive of monosyllabic verbs, e.g. избра́нь chosen [v. § 49, II.], на́нять, про́далъ, etc.

e.g.	вы́йти	to go out	выхо́дить
	прове́сти	to pass (time)	прово́дить
	обнов́ить	to renew	обновля́ть
<i>Observe</i>	поло́жить	suppose	полага́ть
	уло́жить	pack	укла́дывать
	доло́жить	report (a fact)	докла́дывать

*Observe* :—

	Perfective.		Imperfective.
	вы́бѣжать	to run away	вы́бѣгать
<i>but</i>	вы́бѣгáть	to attain by a run	вы́бѣгивáть
	вы́йти	to go away	вы́ходить
<i>but</i>	вы́ходíть	to gain	вы́хаживáть
	за́ѣхать (за́ѣду)	to go beyond	за́ѣжáть
<i>but</i>	за́ѣздить	to tire out	за́ѣзживáть
	провести́	to lead through	проводíть
<i>but</i>	проводíть	to accompany	провожа́ть, or прово́живáть

*In some cases* the only perfective is the semelfactive in -нуть.

e.g.	двѣ́ннуть	to move	двѣ́гать
	ки́внуть	to nod	ки́вáть
	тро́ннуть	to touch	тро́гать
	ше́пнуть	to whisper	ше́птáть
	кри́кнуть	to cry	крича́ть
	вздо́хнуть	to sigh	вздо́хáть

In forming imperfectives the general rule is that the iterative form of the uncompounded verb is the stem of the imperfective of the compounded verb.

e.g.	проме́длить	to delay	проме́дливáть
	обману́ть	to deceive	обма́нывáть
	погáснуть*	to be extinguished	погасáть
	поги́бнуть*	to perish	поги́бáть
	взгля́нуть	to look up	взгля́дывáть
	замкнóуть	to lock up	замы́кáть

*Observe*.—тяну́ть (imperfective) to pull, тя́гивáть; but in compounds, протя́нуть to stretch forth, протя́гивáть. [v. § 50, I.]

\* But past tense поги́бъ, погáсь.



e.g. Онъ вы́тянулъ о́громаго ле́ща.

He pulled up a huge bream.

Ива́нь Ива́нычъ тя́нетъ ля́мку до́браго семья́нина.

Iván Ivánuč works hard like a good family man [pulls the shoulder-strap].

Мой дру́гъ нео́днокра́тно вы́тягива́лъ меня́ изъ т́руднаго по́ложэ́нiя.

My friend more than once has pulled me out of an awkward situation.

Other instances are:—

Perfective.

узна́ть

acknowledge

ослабѣ́ть

to become weak

осла́бнуть (semelfactive)

повѣ́рить

believe

поручи́ть

to commission

продо́лжить

to continue

помѣ́тить

to mark

убѣ́жать

to run away

переплы́ть

to swim through

уѣ́хать

to drive away  
(in a carriage)

отогна́ть

to drive away

описа́ть

to describe

пригото́вить

to prepare

придѣ́лать

to affix

приже́чь

to scorch

приказа́ть

to decree

прими́рить

to reconcile

избра́ть

to choose

Imperfective.

узнава́ть (узнаю́)  
[§ 53 (5)]

ослабѣ́вать

повѣ́рять

поруча́ть

продо́лжать

помѣ́чать

убѣ́гать

переплы́вать

уѣ́зжать

отгона́ть

описа́вать

пригото́влять

придѣ́лывать

прижига́ть

приказа́ывать

прими́рять

избира́ть



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

Similarly, transitive verbs in -ить are derived from intransitive primitives.

e.g. лечь to lie down	положить to lay
сѣсть to sit down	посадить to seat
стать to stand (ста́ну)	станови́ться to stand, and ста́вить to place

e.g. Я поста́вилъ ва́зу на коло́пну.

I put the vase on the column.

VI. по and за as forming depreciatory and inceptive verbs.

по when compounded with some verbs gives a depreciatory or diminutive sense.

e.g. мы́ться to wash  
 помы́ться to wash here and there  
 пому́тить to create squabbles  
 покúривать, покурíть, to smoke occasionally  
 покúшать (perfective поѣсть) to eat by snacks  
 покáрмливать (покормíть) to feed slightly  
 покáчивать to waver (покача́ть perfective,  
 покачну́ть to shake)  
 покáшлять to cough a little (покашли́вать)

за often creates another inceptive aspect, to begin doing.

e.g. зава́ривать (заварíть perfective) to simmer  
 завѣшива́ть (завѣсítь) to veil, begin veiling  
 засвиста́ть to begin whistling  
 засмѣя́ться to begin laughing  
 засыха́ть (засо́хнуть) to start drying  
 затмева́ть (затми́ть) to grow dusk, etc.  
 затону́ть to start sinking (зата́пливать),  
 затопíть perfective  
 засѣва́ть (засѣя́ть) to begin to sow

But compounds with *за* are often perfective.

e.g. *Русские затопили\** корабль въ Севастопольской  
бухтѣ.

The Russians sank the ship in the Bay of  
Sebastopol.

## § 60. REFLEXIVE AND PASSIVE VERBS.

As stated previously [v. *infra*, § 10, § 42 (2) (i) and (ii)] the Russian verb is very defective; it possesses only one conjugated tense, and no subjunctives.

The passive is mostly supplied by the reflexive, *ся* and *сь* being added to the terminations [v. § 41, V. (1)]; *ся* being added to consonantal terminations, *сь* to vocalic. This *ся* is nearly always unaccented; there are very few exceptions.

e.g. я дѣлаюсь I become, am made, дѣлается,  
дѣлавшись, etc.

родиться to be born, родится, родился, родились  
or родились.

*Deponent* verbs also exist, i.e. reflexive forms in which the reflexive idea has vanished, or is not expressed or required in translation.

e.g. я моюсь I wash myself, I wash  
король верну́лся домо́й the King has returned  
home  
стыдѣ́ться to feel ashamed †

---

\* Distinguish затопѣть, затопленный (затоплять) to sink; and затопѣть, затопленный, затоплять, to heat.

† Distinguish стыдъ shame, стыдѣ́ться; and стѣ́ть (perfective), стѣ́нуть (imperfective) to be cold.

• Similarly in French “se suicider,” “s’approcher de” are always reflexive or deponent.

But when a verb has as its express object the same person as the subject, the enclitic form *ся* and *сь* (which are *always* sounded *сá* and *сь* [v. § 41, V. (1)]), are *not* used, the full form *себя* taking their place.

e.g. Алексѣй не владѣеть собою.

Alexis has no self-control.

Мальчикъ взлѣзъ на крышу и убится.

The boy crawled on to the roof and was killed.

Онъ покóнчилъ собою.

He committed suicide [ended by himself].

Онъ оговорился что его цифры мóгутъ быть невѣрны и себя оградилъ этимъ отъ всякихъ нарекавйй.

He defended himself on the ground that his figures might not be correct, and guarded himself on this score from all blame.

Ты не испóльзовалъ своего положенія а я провёлъ своё время безполéзнымъ образомъ.

You made no use of your position, and I spent my time uselessly.

Я всегда имѣю при себѣ портрётъ жены.

I always have my wife’s portrait with me.

The Passive is also expressed in two other ways:—

(1) With a passive participle and the verb *быть* as in English.

e.g. Кóмната была убрана цвѣтами.

The room was decorated with flowers.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



e.g. пять козъ five goats

but двѣ козы́ two goats (коза́, plural козы́)

три рубля́ three roubles (plural рублѣ́)

три́дцать три поѣзда thirty-three trains

Also сто one hundred

двѣ́сти two hundred (Old Slav dual termination)

три́ста three hundred (gen. sing.)

пятьсо́тъ five hundred (gen. plural)

Other notes on the use of the numerals will be found in § 81.

## § 62. I.—The Numerals 1–10.

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.	Collective.*	Fraction.
1	оди́нь	Adj.	пе́рвый		
2	два	„	второ́й	дво́е, па́ра	полови́на
3	три	„	тре́тій †	тро́е	тре́ть ‡
4	четы́ре	„	четве́ртый	че́тверо	че́тверть ‡
5	пять	Noun	пя́тый	пя́теро	пя́тая §
6	шесть	„	шесто́й	ше́стеро	шестáя §
7	семь	„	седьмо́й	се́меро	etc.
8	во́семь	„	восьюмо́й	во́сьмеро	
9	де́вятъ	„	девя́тый	де́вятеро	
10	де́сять	„	деся́тый	де́сятеро	

These are the ten simple forms.

\* The most common are дво́е, тро́е, че́тверо, пя́теро, се́меро; but all are equally common in the form вдво́е, втро́е, etc., meaning 2nd, twice, three times as much. Families are thus designated: у него́ дво́е, тро́е, че́тверо, дѣтей: пять, шесть, семь, etc., челове́къ дѣтей; of an assembly, ихъ бу́детъ пять, etc., челове́къ.

† Declined like бара́ний [v. § 34 (3)].

‡ Feminines in и.

§ Supply часть part. All the other fractions are similarly formed.

|| Very rare.

Одѣнь is declined exactly like самъ [v. § 41, VIII.]; the vowel “и” drops out.

Thus—одѣнь, одно́, одна́, одного́, одной, etc.

	<i>Plural.</i>	
	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.
e.g. Nom.	одни́	однѣ́
Gen. Loc.	однихъ́	однѣхъ́
Dat.	однимъ́	однѣмъ́
Instr.	одними́	однѣми́

The plural means “some,” cf. English “the ones.” Both forms, одни́, однѣ́, are generally sounded alike (одни́).

e.g. Вѣдь на ѣтихъ полкахъ остало́сь то́лько де́сять книгъ.

There are only ten books left on these shelves.

У меня́ остало́сь лишъ три рубля́.

I have only three roubles left.

Какъ на бѣду́ у меня́ остало́сь то́лько три яйца́.

Unluckily I have only three eggs left.

два, три, четы́ре are declined as follows :—

	Masc. and Neut.		Fem.	
e.g. Nom.	два	двѣ́	три	четы́ре
Gen. Loc.	двухъ́		трѣхъ́	четырёхъ́
Dat.	двумъ́		трѣмъ́	четыремъ́
Instr.	двумя́		трѣмя́	четырьмя́

пять to де́сять are regular nouns like кость, часть, etc.

e.g. Nom.	пять
Gen. Dat. Loc.	пяти́
Instr.	пятью́

But, as nouns, the numerals are only followed by the genitive in the nominative or accusative; in oblique



cases they take the case of the nouns; the numeral is attracted to the case of the noun.

о́ба, о́бѣ both, is declined similarly to два.

	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.
e.g. Nom.	о́ба	о́бѣ
Gen. Loc.	обо́ихъ	о́бѣихъ
Dat.	обо́имъ	о́бѣимъ
Instr.	обо́ими	о́бѣими

## II.—*The Numerals 11–90.*

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Part of speech.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
11	оди́ннадцать	Noun	оди́ннадцатый
12	двѣ́надцать	„	двѣ́надцатый (collective дюжина)
13	трина́дцать	„	трина́дцатый
14	четы́рнадцать	„	четы́рнадцатый
15	пятна́дцать	„	пятна́дцатый
16	шестна́дцать	„	шестна́дцатый
17	семна́дцать	„	семна́дцатый
18	восемна́дцать	„	восемна́дцатый
19	девятна́дцать	„	девятна́дцатый
20	два́дцать	„	два́дцатый
21	два́дцать оди́нь [v. § 61 (δ)]		два́дцать пе́рвый
22	два́дцать два, etc.	„	два́дцать второ́й, etc.
30	три́дцать	Noun	три́дцатый
40	со́рокъ	„	сороково́й
50	пятьдеся́тъ*	„	пятидеся́тый
60	шестьдеся́тъ	„	шестидеся́тый
70	се́мьдеся́тъ	„	семидеся́тый
80	во́семьдеся́тъ	„	восемидеся́тый
90	девяно́сто	„	девяно́стый

For the fractions, v. пять.

\* Sounded pidd'ísyát'.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Part of speech.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
500	пятьсо́тъ	Two nouns	пятисо́тый
600	шестьсо́тъ	„ „	шестисо́тый
700	семьсо́тъ	„ „	семисо́тый
800	восемьсо́тъ	„ „	восемьсо́тый
900	девятьсо́тъ	„ „	девятисо́тый
1,000	ты́сяча	Noun	ты́сячный
2,000	двѣ́ ты́сячи	Adj. & noun	двухты́сячный
3,000	три ты́сячи	„ „	трѣхты́сячный
4,000	четы́ре ты́сячи and so on	„ „	четырёхъ- ты́сячный
60,000	шестьдеся́тъ ты́сячъ	Three nouns	шестидеся́ти- ты́сячный
100,000	сто ты́сячъ	Nouns	сто- or ста- ты́сячный
1,000,000	милліо́нъ	Noun	милліо́нный

сто is declined as follows:—

*Singular.* Nom. Voc. Acc. сто  
Gen. ста, etc.

Similarly девяно́сто. But when сто is used in a long figure, with others, all the oblique cases are uniformly ста (the genitive); and similarly девяно́сто.

*Plural.* Nom. Voc. Acc. ста  
Gen. сотъ  
Dat. стамъ  
Instr. ста́ми  
Loc. стахъ

*All the compound numerals in this division decline each part separately.*

e.g. двѣ́сти, двухъсо́тъ, двумстамъ, двумяста́ми,  
двухстахъ, etc.

ты́сяча is a regular feminine noun ; but the instrumental singular is sometimes ты́сячью, as though it were a noun of the third declension.

сто, со́рокъ, девяно́сто, when declined with nouns, extend the genitive ending to the dative and instrumental, optionally to the locative.

e.g. Nom. Acc.	сто со́рокъ листо́въ	140 leaves (of paper)
Gen.	ста сорока́ листо́въ	
Dat.	ста сорока́ листáмъ	
Instr.	ста сорока́ листáми	
Loc.	ста сорока́ листáхъ	

IV. (1) *Frequency*. Examples of use:—

оди́нь разъ once, or одна́жды  
 два ра́за twice, or два́жды  
 три ра́за thrice, or три́жды  
 четы́ре ра́за four times, etc., or четы́режды  
 пять разъ [v. § 24 (4)]

This is the only and regular way of forming this series.

(2) *Distributives* are formed with the preposition по, e.g. по́ два, по́ три, по четы́ре; but with all other numbers in the dative: по пяти́, по́ сту, по сороку́, по девяно́сту (or по сорока́).

(3) *Nought* is нуль, masculine.

(4) *The noun is governed by the numeral immediately preceding, however high the whole numeral may be.* In the nominative, or accusative, the noun thus enumerated is in the singular after оди́нь; gen. sing. after два, три,

четыре; gen. plural after all the others. In the oblique cases, i.e. all except the accusative and nominative, the numeral and noun alike are in concord in the appropriate oblique case.

e.g. двáдцать о́днѣ фунтъ 21 pounds  
 т́ридцать три коня́ 33 horses  
 мѣньше двадцати́ пяти́ мину́тъ less than 25 minutes

(5) *Decimals.*

ну́ль цѣ́лыхъ де́вять де́сятыхъ копе́йки съ версты́.

·9 kop. to the verst (nought wholes and nine tenths . . .).

Отъ о́днѣ до ста шестиде́сяти ве́рсть, по о́днѣ цѣ́лой, четы́ре ты́сячи т́риста се́мьдесятъ пять де́сятиты́сячныхъ копе́йки съ пасса́жѣра.

From 1 to 160 versts at 1·4375 kop. per passenger per verst.

(6) *Compound ordinals. Only the last numeral is declined.*

e.g. Двáдцать де́вятаго де́кабръ (мѣ́сяца) въ ты́сяча во́семьсо́тъ де́вяно́сто се́дьмо́мъ го́дѣ.

On the 29th Dec. 1914. [v. § 24 (1).]

Въ сто де́вяно́сто се́дьмо́мъ го́дѣ до ро́ждества́ Христо́ва.

In 197 v.c.

Гостѣ́ница съ бо́лѣе чѣ́мъ двѣ́мьста́ми но́мерами.

A hotel with over 200 rooms.

Цѣ́на ко́мната по́пизжа́ется лѣ́томъ до пѣ́тидеся́ти процѣ́нтовъ.

The price of rooms is reduced in the summer by 50%.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



This arbitrary rule is based on the fact that *два, три, четы́ре* in the older language took the dual; the dual having become obsolete, use was made of whatever inflections most closely approximated to it.

e.g. Nom. *два вы́сокихъ* (or *-іе*) *солда́та* two tall soldiers

Gen. *двухъ вы́сокихъ солда́тъ*

Dat. *двумъ вы́сокимъ солда́тамъ*

Instr. *двумя́ вы́сокими солда́тами*

Loc. *двухъ вы́сокихъ солда́тахъ*

With nouns only used in the plural, there are alternative forms, *дво́и, трóи*; otherwise the collectives are used.

e.g. *ворóта* the gates *че́тверо ворóтъ* four gates

But the ordinary collectives, with the genitive plural, may be used instead of *дво́и, трóи, че́тверо*.\*

*дво́е* and *трóе* are declined like *о́ба*, but accent the terminations *ихъ, имъ, ими*.

*че́тверо* and all the other similar collectives form the oblique cases like plural adjectives, accenting the termination, e.g. *пяте́рыхъ*, etc.

(8) *полови́на*, standing by itself, is "a half."

It is also used in composition with other words, e.g. *полтора́ 1½* (for *полъ-вторá*; cf. German, *andert-halb 1½, dritthalb 2½*); also in words like *полфу́нта* half a pound, *полчасá* half an hour, *полго́да* half a year, etc. For further notes, v. § 81, IV.

---

\* So, too, in Latin: *templum, tria templa*; but *aedes*, plural *trinae aedes*.

Both parts are separately declined; all the oblique cases of *полъ* being *полу*.

	<i>Masc. Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
	1½ aršins	1½ versts
e.g. N.V.A.	полторá аршіна	полторы́ версты
Gen.	полúтора аршинъ*	полúторы вёрсть
Dat.	{ полúтора полúтору } аршінамъ	полúторѣ верстáмъ
Instr.	{ полúтора полúторымъ } аршінами	полúторою верстáми
Loc.	{ полúтора полúторѣ } аршінахъ	полúторѣ верстáхъ

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
	Half-pound	
N.V.A.	полфúнта	полуфúнты
Gen.	полуфúнта	полуфúнтовъ
Dat.	полуфúнту	полуфúнтамъ
Instr.	полуфúнтомъ	полуфúнтами
Loc.	полуфúнтѣ	полуфúнтахъ

However, usage varies with regard to *полторá*, and the masculine forms are often employed with feminine nouns. The noun-component is declined in full in compounds like *полфúнта*, and bears and retains its own accent.

*Пóлдень* and *пóлночь*, “noon” and “midnight,” are declined *полúдня*, *полúвочи*, and so on, the accent always resting on the second syllable, and the *полу* being invariable.

Similarly, *полторáста* 150, *полúтораста*, in all oblique cases.

\* v. § 24 (4).



Other fractions are expressed much as in English.

e.g. двѣ съ половиной бутылки two and a half bottles  
 тридцать пять и семнадцать тридцать восьмьхъ  
 $35\frac{17}{8}$   
 четыре и три четверти  $4\frac{3}{4}$

(9) *Dates.*

The date and the month are put into the genitive, and the year, if accompanying, into the ordinal with the genitive года (годъ) year. If the year stands by itself, the locative въ годѹ is used.

In *dates* the plural of годъ is лѣта (лѣто summer).

e.g. двадцать пятого декабря тысяча девятьсотъ  
 четвертого года, 25th December 1904  
 въ тысяча восемьсотъ пятнадцатомъ годѹ  
 in 1815  
 шестьдесятъ лѣтъ томѹ назадъ sixty years ago

Numerals preceding the noun are exact denotations; when they follow, approximate.

e.g. года черезъ три in about three years' time  
 послѣ трехъ лѣтъ after three years

§ 63. THE ADVERBS.

The adverbial forms of adjectives are simply the neuter singular predicative, excepting adjectives in -скій, which form -ски; e.g. стрóго sternly, дóрого dearly, рáньше earlier, эконо́мически economically.

Other adverbs will be learnt in the course of reading.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

# SYNTAX.

## § 67. PRELIMINARY.

In comparison with most other European languages Russian syntax presents comparatively few difficulties. The order is much the same as in English—subject, verb, object, adverbs.

There are no subjunctives, the use of which becomes technical as in French; gender is in the main sex, or determined by the suffix. Thus in French “*sa majesté le roi*” is feminine, and a following sentence must run: “*elle a bien voulu.*” In Russian, *Его Императорское\* Величество Царь соизволилъ*; the verb is in the masculine, though *Величество* is neuter.

In German, again, “*das Mädchen*” the girl, is supposed to be followed by neuter pronouns; in Russian, as in English, child *дитя* (neuter), *лицо* person (neuter) may be followed by *онъ, она́*, according to sense. Or again, *дѣсять* is feminine, but “there remained ten” (neuter, *general* impersonal sense) is *осталося дѣсять*. [v. § 62, I.]

The Russian richness in inflections gives the language a freedom of order such as was possessed by ancient Latin and Greek. But whereas the order of Latin was conventionalised and stiffened, Russian retains the natural order of words, with the liberty of slight transposition for emphasis; adjectives precede unless otherwise desired; in fact, much the same considerations obtain as in English. But ambiguity ceases, the inflection defining the relations.

---

\* v. § 83, IV.

In one respect, as stated in § 33, Russian shows less flexibility in the formation of compound nouns. German (amongst modern languages) is the most adaptable, e.g. "Eisenbahnfremdverkehrsverbindungen" Railway - foreign - traffic - connections. English tacitly has the same power, with some ambiguity, e.g. The Foreign Office Clerks' Providence Society; the wooden baby's chair. In Russian all such relations *must* be stated by means of adjectives; e.g. желѣзная доро́га the railway, военные запáсы war supplies, на полицѣйскомъ хранѣнiи in police detention.

### § 68. THE ARTICLE.

The article does not exist in Russian. Nevertheless тотъ is occasionally used for the definite article, and одинъ for the indefinite, where the sentence requires amplification.

e.g. In the folk-tales :—

Жи́ль-быль оди́нь бѣ́дный вдовѣ́ць.

There once lived a poor widower.

Тотъ са́мый торго́вецъ кото́рый мнѣ́ про́далъ  
велосипе́дь совѣ́тусть тепѣ́рь меня́ купи́ть  
мотосикле́тъ.

The same dealer who sold me a bicycle now recommends me to buy a motor-cycle.

### § 69. THE CASES.

I. *The Nominative.*—As in all languages, the nominative is used for the subject of the sentence. It can *never* be governed by any preposition.

II. *The Vocative* has survived only a very few *strictly ecclesiastical* phrases.

e.g. Бóже	from	Богъ	God
Гóсподи	from	Госпóдь	Lord
Óтче	from	Отéцъ	Father
Христé	from	Христóсъ	Christ
Квѣ́же	from	Кнѣзь	Prince
Иисýсе	from	Иисýср	Jesus
Сы́не	from	Сынъ	the Son
Царю́	from	Царь	Tsar
Влады́ко	from	Влады́ка	Lord

In modern Russian the nominative takes its place.

III. *The Accusative* is properly the case to denote the direct object; e.g. Jack (nominative) built a house (accusative) Ивѣ́нь пострóилъ домъ.

However, in modern Russian, except in the singular of the second declension, special accusative forms no longer exist. [v. § 13.]

Hence a rule has sprung up that, *except* for nouns of the second declension in the singular, the objective case shall be the genitive whenever the object is a living being; also, without any exception, whenever the sentence is negative (in which event the genitive is really partitive; e.g. "I did not see him" is equivalent to "I saw nothing *of* him" \*). In every case the nominative form is used.

e.g. Принесѣ́ сюда́ я́блоки.
Bring the apples here.
Приведѣ́ завтра́ тво́его́ дру́га.
Bring your friend to-morrow.

\* Cf. in modern Spanish the use of *á* when the object is a person, e.g. "él conduzo *á* Juan" he brought John.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



In English there are two methods of indicating the genitive: the possessive case in *s*, and the preposition *of*.

(i) The simple genitive is used in three distinct ways: ( $\alpha$ ) subjective, ( $\beta$ ) objective, ( $\gamma$ ) defining.

e.g. ( $\alpha$ ) Wilson's house, i.e. Wilson has a house.  
(In such cases an active verb may be substituted.)

Cæsar's hatred, i.e. Cæsar hates.

( $\beta$ ) Henry IV.'s assassin, i.e. Henry IV. *was* assassinated.

The torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. the *Formidable* was torpedoed. (I.e. a passive verb may be substituted.)

( $\gamma$ ) A man of great talent, i.e. a greatly talented man.

In the last case an adjective may be substituted, and such phrases are really *inversions* of adjectives.

These subjective and objective genitives may be compounded.

e.g. U 21's torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. U 21 torpedoed the *Formidable*.

In other languages there is great ambiguity on this score. In Latin the genitive is used both subjectively and objectively: thus "Cæsar's odium" may mean either that Cæsar hates, or that Cæsar is hated; so, too, in French, "la haine de César."

In English there are irregular attempts to distinguish by means of the two forms, e.g. "Cæsar's hatred," or "the hatred of Cæsar."

Lastly, a subjective or objective genitive may be general or particular, permanent or casual. In the former event, an adjective can in very many cases be substituted.

e.g. God's love = the Divine love.

The king's banner = the royal banner.

But one does not speak (except jokingly) of the "royal pocket-handkerchief" or "the 'divine' love (of Zeus) for Semele."

In Russian we find the simplicity of French with the accuracy attempted by English, which has a rich stock of adjectival forms.

(1) *Subjective genitives* (nearly always possessive).

When *general*, the adjective of the governing noun is used; when *particular*, the genitive.

e.g. Нога́ слона́ раздавила́ чере́пь тигра́.

The elephant's leg shattered the tiger's skull.

(Possessive genitive.)

Нога́ слона́ почти́ безъ воло́сь.

The elephant's leg is almost hairless.

(Generic genitive.)

Слоно́вая кость сто́итъ доро́го.

Ivory [literally, elephant's bone] is dear.

Кавайля́къ, уби́йца Генри́ха четвёртаго.

Cavaillac, the assassin of Henry IV.

(Objective.)

Ио́анновы [наёмны́е] уби́йцы.

Iván (the Terrible's) [hired] assassins,

(Subjective.)



Пѣтъкины дни тянѹлись однообразно.

Pétya's days dragged on monotonously.

(Subjective and general.)

Именины Госудáря.

The Emperor's birthday (as a mere fact).

Госудáревы именины.

The Emperor's birthday (generalized, e.g. as a public holiday).

Закáтъ сóлнца.

Sunset (as a particular fact on a certain day).

Сóлнечный закáтъ.

Sunset (as a natural phenomenon).

Солдáтская свирѣпость.

Soldiers' savagery (in general).

*But* Свирѣпость солдатъ.

The soldiers' savagery (in particular).

Входъ въ дворéць.\*

The entrance of the palace (in particular).

*But* Дворцóвые входы стрóго охраняются солдáтами.

Palace entrances are strictly guarded by soldiers (in general).

Дорóга (or шоссé) къ Москвѣ́; отъ Москвѣ́.

The Moscow high-road (direction to or from).

\* I.e. in a direction; cf. English "the entrance into the station." But in French only "l'entrée de la gare," "la route de Versailles."



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

У него́ сѣльная любу́вь къ иску́ству.

He has a great love of art.

Убу́йство Эду́арда второ́го.

The murder of Edward II.

Наде́жды Пѣти на повыше́нїя.

Peter's hopes of promotion (in particular).

(Пѣтїны in general.)

Разска́зчикъ э́той ска́зки.

The narrator of this fairy tale.

Ска́зочный ры́царь.

A fairy knight.

*In conclusion.*—(1) The possessive or other adjectival form must be substituted for the noun in the genitive in all phrases, where the sense is generalized.

(2) When the genitive is objective, the relationship is usually more closely defined by a proper preposition; but the possessive adjective is almost always inadmissible.

(3) In Russian, except for the proclitic pronouns *его́, ея́, ихъ*, the genitive always *follows* the noun.

(4) The possessive adjective is *also* used to avoid a *succession* of genitives.

e.g. Моги́ла Вѣры нахо́дилась въ глубинѣ́ кла́дбища.

Vera's grave was at the bottom of the cemetery.

*But* подро́бности Вѣриной смѣрти.

The details of Vera's death (“*de la mort de Véra*”).

(ii) There exists a partitive genitive [v. § 24 (1)] in “*у*” with some nouns of the second declension,

and a distinction is made which can only be learnt by practice; generally speaking, when quantity, not quality, is implied, the form in “y” is preferred to that in “a.”

e.g. Пода́йте мнѣ ча́ю.

Give me some tea (*donnez-moi du thé*).

Два фунта са́хару.

Two pounds of sugar.

У насъ есть два со́рта ча́я.

We have two sorts of tea.

(iii) The genitive (and similarly the dative) frequently replaces the English nominative, in the impersonal constructions, for which the Russian language has a predilection.

e.g. За́втра, мо́жетъ-бы́ть мѣня не бу́детъ здѣсь.

To-morrow, may-be I shall not be here;  
literally, “there will not be of me here.”

Мнѣ не хо́чется спать.

I do not want to go to sleep.

Его́ нѣтъ до́ма.

He is not at home.

(iv) The genitive is replaced by the dative, in many instances, of ownership or possession.

e.g. Цѣна́ э́тимъ лошада́мъ двѣсти рубле́й.

The price of these horses is 200 roubles.

Онъ мнѣ ста́рый дру́гъ.

He is an old friend.

Such sentences are really instances of the *dativus commodi*.

(v) The genitive is used after comparatives  
[cf. § 38, V.]

e.g. Дядя мо́ложе сво́ей племя́нницы.

The uncle is younger than his niece.

Россія въ семна́дцать разъ бо́льше Фра́нции.

Russia is seventeen times bigger than France.

(vi) The genitive is the objective case, as stated  
in § 69, III.

(vii) The genitive is used after the adjectives and  
verbs denoting *fulness, worthiness, deprivation, fear, desire,*  
*expectancy, and value.*

e.g. Жизнь полна́ го́ря.

Life is full of sorrow.

Онъ досто́инъ наказáнiя.

He deserves to be punished.

Вашъ вопро́съ касáется вы́ше-изло́женныхъ  
пункто́въ.

Your question touches points previously  
defined.

Я прошу́ ва́шего прощéнiя.

I beg for your forgiveness.

Онъ лиш́лся жи́зни.

He deprived himself of life (committed  
suicide).

Судъ лиш́лъ Петра́ Ива́новича всѣхъ правъ  
состо́янiя.

The court deprived Peter Ivánovič of all  
rights of position (civil rights).

Всѣ люди́ желáютъ здоро́вья.

Everybody desires health.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



V. *The Dative.*

As in other languages, the dative marks the personal relation or effect.

e.g. **Мнѣ** полезно читать по-ру́сски.

It is useful to me to read Russian.

The dative is also extensively used instead of the genitive. [v. § 69, IV. (iv).]

As in Latin, French, German, and other languages, many verbs which in English take a direct object are intransitive and take the dative.

e.g. **грози́ть кому́** threaten

**удивля́ться чему́** be surprised

**зави́довать кому́** or **чему́** envy

**смѣ́яться чему́** to rejoice at a thing (but  
**смѣ́яться надъ кѣмъ** of a person)

**вѣ́рить кому́** or **чему́** believe (but **вѣ́ровать**  
**въ Бо́га** believe in God)

Other instances of verbs requiring a dative are :—

**жа́ловаться кому́ на кого́** to complain to A of B  
**моли́ться кому́ за что́** to pray to someone for  
something

**кла́няться кому́** to greet (to bow down to)

**мсти́ть кому́ за что́** to take vengeance on  
somebody for something

**напоми́нать что́ кому́** to remind somebody of  
something

**учи́ть кого́ чему́** to teach somebody something

**учи́ться чему́** to learn something

But only practice can supply a full knowledge of such usages.

e.g. **Чемý вы смѣетесь?**

What are you making merry of?

**Я вѣрю только математическимъ доказательствамъ.**

I believe only mathematical proofs.

**Я смѣюсь надъ вашимъ высокомеріемъ.**

I smile at your arrogance.

**Отсѣль грозить мы будемъ Шведу.**

From this spot we shall threaten the Swede.

**Мы удивились его скорому возвращенію.**

We were astonished at his swift return.

**Я завидую вашему богатству.**

I envy your wealth.

**Я завидую Ротшильду.**

I envy Rothschild.

## VI. *The Instrumental.*

This case denotes the *instrument by which* something is done, or the *agent by whom* something is done.

Thus :—(1) It is used after passive verbs.

e.g. **Царь былъ помазанъ архіепіскопомъ.**

The Tsar was anointed by the archbishop.

**Царь былъ помазанъ мýромъ.**

The Tsar was anointed with the chrism.

(2) It also denotes the means by which a thing is done or made.

e.g. **Деревья рубятъ топорами.**

Trees are cleft with axes.



(3) It is used predicatively (like the dative in Latin) after verbs of becoming, or *быть* in the past tense.

e.g. *Ивѣнъ былъ моимъ слугою.*

John used to be my servant.

*Онъ сдѣлался больнымъ.*

He made himself ill.

Hence such irregular concords may arise as: *онъ назвалъ меня дуракомъ* he called me a fool.

(4) It is used to denote the mode or manner where we in English should say "like . . ."

e.g. *Орёлъ летѣлъ стрѣлою.*

The eagle flew like an arrow.

*Онъ воображаетъ себя великимъ государемъ.*

He fancies himself a mighty emperor.

(5) The instrumental is also used with words of measure.

e.g. *Онъ продолжалъ идти мѣрнымъ шагомъ.*

He continued to go at a regular pace.

*Море здѣсь глубиной въ десять сажень.*

The sea is here 10 sažens deep.

*Температура больного повѣсилась двумя градусами.*

The patient's temperature has gone up two degrees.

*But* *Этотъ садъ на аршинъ шире твоего.*

This garden is an aršin broader than yours.

*Моё яблоко въ двадцать разъ слаще того.*

My apple is twenty times sweeter than that one.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## § 70. TABLE OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

Governing one case only:—

ple.	Genitive.		Dative.		Instr.	Loc.	Verbal Prefixes.		
	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.			Used with Nouns and Verbs.	With Verbs only.	
сквозь		безъ	мимо	къ	надъ	при	въ	подъ	воз
		до	вдоль				до	предъ	вы
		изъ	вмѣсто				за	при	пере
		изъ-за	внутри				изъ	про	пре
		изъ-подъ	подъ				на	съ	разъ
		отъ	вокругъ				надъ	у	
		у	возлѣ				о		
			для				отъ		
			кромѣ				по		
			среди						
			кругомъ						

Those governing Objective and Instrumental :—

		Prepositions never used as Verbal Prefixes.	
за		за	
подъ		подъ	черезъ
предъ		предъ	къ

Governing Objective and Locative :—

въ			въ	
на			на	
о			о	

Governing Objective, Dative, Locative :—

по			по	
----	--	--	----	--

Governing Objective, Genitive, Instrumental :—

съ			съ	
----	--	--	----	--

Governing Genitive and Instrumental :—

			между	
--	--	--	-------	--

\* I.e. accusative of inanimate objects; genitive of animate, excepting the accusative sing. in -у, -ю of nouns in -а, -я.

## § 71. THE PREPOSITIONS.

*Preliminary.*

I. In order further to assert the relationships of nouns and verbs, as in other languages the cases are not sufficient. They have to be more accurately and extensively defined by means of prepositions.

II. Prepositions and particles are either simple or adverbial, e.g. in English “by” and “beside.”

III. Most simple prepositions are compounded with verbs; but *черезъ* through, *къ* to, *безъ* without, cannot be thus used; nor are *воз-* up, *вы-* out, *пере-* again, *пре-* in excess, used except with verbs.

IV. Most prepositions govern only one case, some govern two, and some three.

V. The prepositions and the cases they govern are all stated in the Table § 70.

VI. Prepositions governing the objective take the accusative (or nominative) of inanimate things, and the genitive of living things [v. § 69, III.].

In a few instances only the older practice survives of a preposition taking the accusative with nouns denoting a living being; e.g. the idiomatic use of *въ* in *въ гóсти*, *въ ня́ньки*, to be a guest, nurse, etc.

VII. Monosyllabic prepositions preceding monosyllabic nouns (including under this designation dissyllabic nouns in liquids, e.g. *гóродъ*, *бéрегъ* [v. § 5 (5)])



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



че́резъ through and across.

e.g. Че́резъ рѣ́ку́ across the river.

Че́резъ стекло́ ви́дно.

One can see [ви́дно it is visible] through glass.

Че́резъ него́ мно́гие пострада́ли.

Through him many have suffered.

Я у него́ бу́ду че́резъ неде́лю.

I shall be with him in one week.

### § 73 (1). PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE ONLY.

*These prepositions always govern the genitive; not merely the objective case.*

безъ without.

e.g. Безъ де́негъ without money.

Безъ наде́жды without hope.

близъ\* near.

e.g. Близъ го́рода near the town.

Близъ моего́ му́жа стоя́ла Наста́ся.

Nastásya was standing near my husband.

вдо́ль along.

e.g. Вдо́ль у́лицы along the street.

вмѣ́сто† instead of.

e.g. Вмѣ́сто весе́лія го́ре бы́ло.

It was woe instead of joy.

вну́трі\* inside.

e.g. Вну́трі чемода́на inside the portmanteau.

внѣ́\* outside.

e.g. Внѣ́ Евро́пы outside Europe.

\* Whence adjectives бли́жій, вну́тренный, внѣ́шній.

† Not to be confused with the adverb вмѣ́стѣ together; e.g. вмѣ́стѣ съ тобо́ю together with you.

вѳ́злѳ́ beside.

e.g. Вѳ́злѳ́ пѳ́чи beside the stove.

вокрѳ́гъ or кругѳ́мъ round.

e.g. Вокрѳ́гъ цѳ́ркви round the church.

длѳ́ for the purpose of.

e.g. Длѳ́ лѳ́чѳ́нѳ́я for the purpose of being healed.

до defines the limit "up to which."

e.g. До стѳ́рости дѳ́жилъ.

He lived up to old age.

Читѳ́й отъ начѳ́ла до концѳ́а.

Read from the beginning to the end.

Отъ Лондона до Парѳ́жа.

From London to Paris.

До полѳ́дня.

Until mid-day *or* before mid-day.

До Рождествѳ́а Христѳ́ва.

V.c., i.e. up to *or* before the birth of Christ.

До Царѳ́а Николѳ́а Николѳ́евича.

Before Tsar Nicholas Nikoláyevič.

Ихъ бѳ́ло до десятѳ́и.

There were up to (*or* about) ten of them.

до in compound verbs gives a sense of finishing ;  
e.g. дочитѳ́ть to read to the end.

изъ from, out of.

e.g. Изъ огнѳ́а out of the fire.

Изъ дрѳ́жбы out of friendship.

изъ is scarcely ever used in measurements of time  
(*v.* отъ).



изъ-за́ up out of.

e.g. Со́лнце вы́шло изъ-за лѣсу́.

The sun rose out of the wood.

Изъ-за́ нея́ “Thanks to her . . .”

изъ-подъ from under.

e.g. Изъ-подъ меня́ взяли сту́ль.

They took my chair from under me.

изъ in composition with verbs retains its original meaning.

Before heavy consonants it becomes *изо*; e.g. *изождать* to await.

Before soft vowels it retains the *ъ*; e.g. *изъѣденный* (*мо́лю*) moth-eaten.

Before unvoiced consonants it is written and sounded *ис*; e.g. *истра́тить* to squander.

кро́мъ besides.

e.g. Кро́мъ та́кихъ примѣровъ.

Besides such examples.

Кро́мъ лошадей онъ завёлъ ещё автомоби́ль.

Besides his horses he brought a motor.

Кро́мъ то́го in addition to this.

The “gerundive” or undeclined participle, *исключая́*, is used absolutely to mean “except, excepting”; e.g. *исключая́ англича́нъ никако́и наро́дъ свободо́енъ* excepting the English no nation is free.

ми́мо past an object.

e.g. Орёлъ летѣ́лъ ми́мо моего́ са́да.

The eagle flew past my garden.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

пóслѣ after (in time or order).

e.g. Пóслѣ ухóда отъ дóлжности.

After retirement from service.

Пóслѣ короля вошёлъ егó слугá.

After the king his servant entered.

прóтивъ against *or* opposite to.

e.g. Прóтивъ дворцá стоить собóръ.

Opposite to the palace stands the cathedral.

Россія бóрется прóтивъ Нѣмцевъ.

Russia is fighting against the Germans.

ради for the sake of.

e.g. Ради твоёй матери.

For the sake of your mother.

сверхъ besides.

e.g. Сверхъ рáзума beyond reason.

Сверхъ жáлованья, получаётъ награду.

In addition to a salary, he gets an emolument.

Сверхъ тогó furthermore.

средѣ *or* посредѣ in the middle of.

e.g. Посредѣ óстрова in the middle of the island.

Other adverbial phrases are also used with the genitive, but need not be noticed here.

у means "at," "by" (of place).

e.g. У дѣль at work.

У ногъ когó at one's feet.

у with the verb *есть* replaces the verb “to have.”

e.g. У меня́ есть хлѣбъ. [v. § 87].

I have a loaf.

У себя́ ли ба́ринь ?

Is your master at home ?

у with the personal pronouns, or proper names, has much the same force as the Latin *apud* or the French *chez*.

e.g. У Петро́выхъ всегда́ хоро́шій обѣдъ.

They dine well at the Petrovs.

In composition with verbs its use can hardly be profitably defined.

### § 73 (2). THE PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

Of these there are only two.

къ can be used with some nouns to indicate approximate time.

e.g. Къ вѣчеру toward evening.

Otherwise къ merely amplifies the ordinary meaning of the dative “to” or “for.”

e.g. Къ бе́регу to the bank.

Пришлю́ кни́гу къ нему́.

I will send the book to him.

къ is never combined with verbs. When used with nouns, the consonant к is merely sounded in front, like l' and d' in French : “l'âme,” “d'autres.” Before dentals and gutturals къ is softened to х in pronunciation ; e.g. къ тому́ is sounded хтому́ ; къ дому́, хдо́му.

Before heavy initial consonants **къ** is sounded, and is sometimes written, **ко**.

e.g. **Ко двору́** to the courtyard.

Similar rules apply to **въ** and **съ**, which may be written and sounded **во** and **со**.

**Вопреки́** in spite of.

**Вопреки́ егó старáнiямъ** despite his endeavours.

#### § 74. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE INSTRUMENTAL.

**надъ** means “above,” “over.”

e.g. **Надъ землёю** over the earth.

**Брать верхъ надъ кѣмъ (чѣмъ)** to overcome someone.

**Божья воля надо мною.**

God's will over me.

**Бѣда́ виситъ надъ егó головой.**

Sorrow hangs over his head.

**между́** may be added to this paragraph, as it is only occasionally used with the genitive. It means “between.”

e.g. **Сидѣтъ между́ двухъ стульевъ — положéние Румы́нiи.**

Sitting on the fence [between two chairs]—

Roumania's situation.

**Между́ двумя́ деревьями было́ окно́.**

There was a window between two trees.

It can also have a derived meaning, “among.”



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



За́ десять лѣтъ сво́ей слѹ́жбы пріобрѣ́лъ большѹ́ю  
о́пытность.

In ten years' service he gained great experi-  
ence.

Notice also :—

Мы садѣ́лись за сто́лъ.

We were sitting down at the table.

Also with verbs of “holding,” “grasping.”

e.g. Егó взяли́ за́ руку.

They seized him by the hand.

Меня́ держáли за плéчи.

They held me by the shoulders.

In combination with что, за means “what a . . . !”

e.g. Что́ за шумъ́ ! what a noise !

Also “for the sake of.”

e.g. Мѹ́ченики ѹ́мерли за́ истину́.

The martyrs died for truth.

Моли́сь за́ отца́.

Pray for your father.

And “in price.”

e.g. Прóдалъ́ кни́гу за́ четы́ре рублѣ́.

I sold a book for four roubles.

With the instrumental :—

e.g. Э́тотъ господа́инъ живётъ́ за́ грани́цею.

This gentleman lives abroad.

За́ са́домъ́ behind the garden,

Я сидѣ́лъ за́ столóмъ.

I sat at the table.

Or “giving the reason.”

e.g. За неприѣздомъ отца мы отложили нашу поѣзду.

On account of my father's non-arrival we postponed our excursion.

Зачѣмъ? why?

Also with verbs of “fetching.”

e.g. Меня послали за сахаромъ.

They sent me to fetch the sugar.

за, in composition with verbs, expresses an incipient action [v. § 59, VI.], but sometimes a completed action, e.g. заснуть go to sleep, заплатить to pay up; in composition with nouns, expresses “at the back of,” “behind”; e.g. загородный suburban (also пригородъ suburb).

II. подъ properly means “under”; with the accusative implying motion, with the instrumental static.

e.g. Я бросилъ его подъ столъ.

I threw him under the table.

Онъ лежитъ подъ печью.

He is lying under the stove.

In regard to *time*.

e.g. Это случилось подъ вечеръ.

This happened in the evening (cf. Latin *sub vespere*).

Also in derivative senses.

e.g. Подъ этими условіями не могу подписаться.

Under these conditions I cannot give my signature.

III. предъ or передъ means “before” (of place, and of time).



The accusative and instrumental similarly refer to motion or rest.

e.g. Я явѣлся пѣредъ судѣѣй.

I appeared before the judges.

Пѣредъ ворѣтами стоѣтъ два столбѣа.

In front of the gates there stand two columns.

Предъ законѣмъ всѣ равны.

All are equal before the law.

*Observe* the adverbs въ передѣ in front, въ перѣдъ forward, на передѣ beforehand.

подъ and предъ, when compounded with verbs, conserve their meaning.

e.g. поднимать	поднять	raise
подпирать	подпереть	prop up
представать	предстать	stand before
представлять	представить	to present

Like отъ, подъ and предъ keep the ъ before soft vowels, and предъ changes to преду before heavy consonants.

e.g. Предъявить to present.

Предусмотрѣть to foresee.

Подъѣдать to nibble, eat from below.

Предусмотрѣть всѣ мелочи.

To foresee all details.

Предъявить вѣксель къ взысканію.

To present a bill for payment.

Онъ подѣхалъ на конѣ.

He came by on horseback.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

(4) One idiomatic use with the accusative plural should be remarked, viz. :—

Меня́ зва́ли въ го́сти.

They invited me as a guest.

Онъ поше́лъ въ офице́ры.

He has become an officer.

Постригúсь въ мона́хи.

I shall take the tonsure as a monk.

*In this idiomatic use the accusative, and not the genitive, is used as the objective case [v. § 71, VI].*

(5) Similarly :—

Сынъ въ отца́.

The son is like his father.

въ with the *locative* means (1) “in.”

e.g. Ба́ринъ въ столо́вой.

Master is in the dining-room.

(2) “in,” in measurements of time.

e.g. Въ сентя́брь мѣсяцѣ́ in September.

Въ ты́сяча девятьсо́тъ пятна́дцатомъ́ году́ in 1915.\*

(3) “in,” in measurements of distance.

e.g. Моя́ да́ча отсю́да въ трѣ́хъ верста́хъ.

My estate is three versts away.

(4) After certain verbs.

e.g. Ка́яться въ грѣ́хѣхъ́ to repent one's sins.

Признава́ться въ оши́бкѣ́ to confess a mistake.

Обви́нѣть ко́го въ уби́йствѣ́ to convict of murder.

---

\* In these phrases *роду́* cannot be omitted, and no other locative form is admissible.

In composition **въ** conserves its meaning.

e.g. **Входи́ть** to enter.

The original form **во** is kept in some accented adverbs; e.g. **во́все** altogether. [v. § 80.]

With verbs commencing with a soft vowel **въ** is still hard and written **въ**.

e.g. **Въѣ́хать** (*vyékhæt'*) to drive in.

II. The preposition **на** primarily means "on."

*With the accusative.*

e.g. (1) **Я ходи́ль на плóщадь.**

I went on to the square.

**Палъ тумáнь на сыру́ю зéмлю.**

A mist fell on the damp earth.

**Я положи́лся на тебѣ́.**

I relied on you.

(2) In reference to time.

**На четвёртый день** on the fourth day.

**Отпущу́ тебѣ́ на три часа́.**

I will let you go for three hours (до трёхъ часа́ until 3 o'clock).

(3) In reference to the effect produced.

**Ку́шайте на здоро́вье.**

Eat for your health, i.e. may it do you good.

**Я слѣ́довалъ ему́ на злó.\***

I followed him to do him hurt.

\* От на́ зло.

(4) “Against,” “in respect of.”

Я сердѣлся на Григоріа.

I got angry with Gregory.

Не жалуйся на твоего брата.

Do not make complaints with respect to  
(against) your brother.

*With the locative.*

e.g. (1) Вáша кнѣга на столѣ.

Your book is on the table.

(2) In words denoting time.

На Рождествѣ.

On Christmas day.

(3) In words indicating the points of the  
compass.

На сѣверѣ in the North.

(a) Мой братъ женился на французѣнкѣ  
племянница которой выйдѣтъ замужъ за  
русскаго подданнаго.

My brother has married a Frenchwoman  
whose niece is going to marry a Russian  
subject.

(β) Играли въ карты.

They were playing cards.

Играли въ шахматы.

They were playing chess (i.e. a *game*).

*But* Играли на скрипкѣ.

They were playing the violin (the musical  
*instrument*).



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



Before verbs beginning in soft vowels it is written and sounded *объ*.

e.g. *Объяснить* to explain.

*Объятіе, объёмъ*, an embrace—the capacity, contents.

Before verbs beginning with *и, ъ + и* are fused into *ы*; e.g. *обыграть* to beat at play, cf. *сыграть* from *съ + играть* to play (a piece of music or at cards).

As a preposition *объ* is the correct form before words beginning with a vowel, and occasionally *обо* before words with heavy initial consonants.

### § 78. THE PREPOSITIONS *по* AND *съ*.

I. *по*, with the accusative, states the limit in space or time, or the purpose of the action.

e.g. *По край свѣта* to the edge of the world.

*Обнажи́ рѹку по́-локоть.*

Bare your arm up to the elbow.

*Мы пробѹдемъ здѣсь по Пасху.*

We shall stay here till Easter.

*По сіе время я ничегó не слыхаль.*

Up to now I have heard nothing.

*По вѣкъ свой (или по смѣртъ) не забѹду.*

I will not forget (for all my life) up to my death.

*Я шѣлъ въ лѣсъ по малину.*

I went into the wood (to gather) raspberries.

*Пошли́ по́ воду.*

Send for water.

*Distributively*, *по два, по три, по четыре* [v. § 62, I. and IV. (2)].

*Notice*—по тѹ стóронѹ, по прáвѹю (рѹкѹ), по лѣвѹю, that side, to the right, to the left.

по with the dative indicates extensive space, in which something happens.

e.g. (1) По горáмъ over the hills.

По гóродѹ through the town.

Плыть по́ морѹ to sail the seas.

Эта травá растётъ по оврáгамъ.

This herb grows in the ravines.

(2) Distributively—

По утра́мъ every morning.

По пятí in fives (and with every number, except два, три, четы́ре). [v. § 62, IV.(2).]

По ночáмъ every night.

По средáмъ every Wednesday.

(3) “According to.”

По-мо́ему\* in my opinion.

По ста́рому in the old-fashioned way.

По чíну according to rank.

Почему́? why?

Потому́ что because.

по with the locative.

(1) With words of time, means “after.”

e.g. Потóмъ thereupon.†

По рождествѣ́ after Christmas.

По Петрѣ́ Вели́комъ after Peter the Great.

\* In this single phrase моему́ is accented мо́ему. So, too, по тво́ему, своему́. Thus:—

По моему́ процессу́ вы́шло по-мо́ему.

My law-suit came off to my liking.

† Whence потóмки, потóмство descendants,



(2) “On account of.”

e.g. Же́на по му́жѣ называ́ется.

A woman bears her husband's name.

По ко́мъ вы въ тра́урѣ?

For whom are you in mourning?

по in composition confers a diminutive sense to the verb [v. § 59, VI.], e.g. погла́дывать to glance here and there; or indicates the completion of the actions, e.g. поби́ть to smite down, посла́ть to send at last.

II. (1) съ with the accusative is used in general measurements of space and time.

e.g. Ру́блей съ пято́къ издержáль.

I spent about five roubles.

Тамъ я про́жилъ съ мѣ́сяцъ.

I stayed there about a month.

Онъ ро́стомъ съ отца́.

He is about as tall as his father.

Ве́рсть со́ сто (съ со́тню) бу́детъ.

It will be about 100 versts away.

(2) съ with the genitive has the primal meaning “down from.”

e.g. Онъ соше́ль съ пла́тформы.

He left the platform.

(изъ implies rather “away from,” in space: e.g. по́вздъ двину́лся изъ Москвы́ the train moved out of Moscow.)

Она́ сошла́ съ ума́.

She has gone mad (literally, out of her mind).

Съ тѣхъ поръ from that time.

Жду́ со дня ва́ день.

I waited from day to day



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

In Old Slavonic the form was **вѣзь**, hence in modern Russian **вз** and **взо** are also met with.

e.g. **взлетѣть** to fly up  
**взду́ть цѣны** to inflate prices

Or before heavy consonants—

e.g. **вздира́ть**, but **вздо́ра́ть** to tear up  
**взира́ть** (for **вззира́ть**), but **воззрѣ́ть** to look up  
 (Cf. **сжечь**,\* but **сожгý** to burn utterly.)

Before verbs beginning with soft vowels the **з** is pronounced and written hard.

e.g. **взѣ́зжа́ть** to drive up

As with other similar prepositions, **ъ + и** after is fused into **ы**.

e.g. **возъ + имѣ́ть** becomes **возымѣ́ть** to conceive  
 (doubts, fears, etc.)

Similarly **раз-**, **разъ-**, **разы-**, **разо-**, **рас-**.

**вы** probably means “out,” and signifies the completion of an act.

e.g. **вы́болѣть** to become utterly ill  
**вы́бѣжать** (perfective) **выбѣга́ть** (imperfective)  
 to run out [v. § 59, IV.]  
**вы́гнать** drive out, **выгоня́ть** (imperfective)

**вы** always takes the tonic accent except as stated in § 59, I. (3), II., and IV., when the imperfective is the

---

\* Sounded *žžeč*.

iterative of the simple verb, in which the imperfective retains the original accent.

e.g. **вы́просить** to question, **выпра́шивать**  
**вы́гадать** to guess, **выга́дывать**

**пере** implies repetition, or change.

e.g. **переду́мать** to reconsider  
**переб́ить** to kill many, to massacre  
**перебыва́ть** to be in many places  
**передопроси́ть** to re-examine  
**перела́мывать** to break to pieces  
**переписа́ть** to copy  
**пересма́тривать** to review, survey ; **пересмо́тръ**  
revision

**пре** implies excellence, and is nearly the same as **предъ** ; with adjectives it forms a superlative.

e.g. **прелюбе́зный** very kindly  
**превыша́ть** to surpass  
**презира́ть** to despise

But it is often merely a bye-form of **пере**.

e.g. **превраща́ть**, **преврати́ть** to transform

**разъ** has a motion of scattering or dissipation.

e.g. **растека́ть** to flow (in various directions)  
**разстана́вливать** to station people apart  
**разы́гривать** to play out to the end  
**разъ́ездъ** a departure (of many people in  
different directions)  
**разува́ть** to take off one's shoes  
**разсѣ́вать** to sow (scatter seed)  
**разсма́тривать** to survey all round

## § 80. THE ACCENTUATION OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

The general rule is that, as in other languages, prepositions are proclitics, i.e. atonic words pronounced with their noun, which is accented; e.g. “in-the-house,” “on-the-table,” “въ домѹ,” “на столѣ.” But in older Russian, and to a slight extent in modern Russian, certain of the simple prepositions—not the adverbial prepositions—when used with monosyllabic or dissyllabic nouns, are accented, the noun becoming the *enclitic*.

e.g. на́ бокъ on the side

Further, when particles are used in compound verbs, in some cases the particle takes the accent, the verb becoming enclitic. This *only* applies—

- (1) to the prefix вы [v. § 79 and § 59, IV.];
- (2) to monosyllabic verbs [v. § 49 and § 52, (1) and (2)]

and generally only to the past participle passive.

e.g.	прожѣть	про́житый	to live through
	начѣть	на́чалъ*	to begin
	избра́ть	и́збранъ	to select
	наня́ть	на́няль and на́нять	to hire †
	назва́ть	на́званъ	called
	пода́ть	по́дданный	a subject (of a State)

This list contains some of the most important phrases in which the old accentuation of the preposition

\* But past part. pass. нача́тый.

† So, too, *all* dissyllabic compounds of -лять.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



Other instances are :—

пó лу́гу (по лу́гу) over the meadow  
 пó морю (по мо́рю) over the sea  
 пó берегу (по бе́регу) along the bank  
 вóвсе at all  
 и́зъ лѣсу out of the wood  
 о́ землю (о зе́млю) against the ground  
 за́ ногу by the leg  
 у́ моря (у мо́ря) by the sea

No very general rule can be stated. In modern Russian the preposition is sometimes accented before simple monosyllabic or dissyllabic nouns, mostly when used with the accusative.

### § 81. THE NUMERALS.

Under this head it is proposed to enumerate some idiomatic uses of the numerals.

I. *The date* (числó), *days* (дни), etc.

The days of the week (недѣля) are :—

Понеде́льникъ	Monday (Недѣля, Church Slavonic for Sunday)
Вторникъ	Tuesday
Среда́	Wednesday (i.e. the middle)
Четве́ргъ	Thursday (i.e. the fourth day)*
Пя́тница	Friday (i.e. the fifth day)
Суббо́та	Saturday (i.e. the Sabbath)
Воскресе́нье	Sunday (literally "Resurrection")
Недѣ́ля	the week

---

\*. In ecclesiastical parlance, четверто́къ.

The months (мѣсяць) are :—

Январь	January	(января́, etc., accenting termination)
Февраль	February	(февраля́, etc.)
Мартъ	March	(марта́, etc.)
Апрѣль	April	(апрѣля́, etc.)
Май	May	(мая́, etc.)
Июнь	June	(ию́ня, etc.)
Июль	July	(ию́ля, etc.)
Августъ	August	(августа́, etc.)
Сентябрь	September	(сентября́, etc.)
Октябрь	October	(октяб́ря, etc.)
Ноябрь	November	(нояб́ря, etc.)
Декабрь	December	(декаб́ря, etc.)

The calendar of the Greek Church is still used in Russia, and is now thirteen days behind the Julian or Western calendar.

Instances are given of the use of these words, illustrating the rules.

e.g. Котóрое (какóе) числó у насъ сегóдня ?

What is the date to-day ?

Шестьна́дцатое января́.

The 16th of January.

Пя́тница двáдцать пята́го (пя́тое) марта́.

Friday the 25th of March.

*Do not use capitals in designating the days and months.*

When the year is mentioned, the year and number all go into the genitive, unless the day is named.



e.g. Средá (въ средý) тpидцать пёрвое мáрта тýсяча  
восемь-сóтъ сóрокъ восьмóго гóда.

Wednesday the 31st March 1848.

*But* Девятнáдцатаго февралá тýсяча восемьсóтъ  
шестдесáть пёрваго гóда.

The 19th of February 1861.

These would be commonly abbreviated :—

e.g. Средá (въ средý) 31-ое мáрта 1848 г.

19-го февралá 1861 г.

Generally both dates are indicated.

e.g. 25/12 iii. 15.

II. *Age.* The following instances illustrate the rules :—

Скóлько Ивáшку (Ивáну) лѣтъ ?

How old is Iváško ?

Какóй вóзрастъ Áнны Петрóвны ?

How old is Ánna Petróvna ?

Ей шестьдесáть лѣтъ.

She is sixty years old.

Опá родилáсь восьмóго мáя тýсяча восемьсóтъ  
сóрокъ вторóго гóда.

She was born on the 8th May 1842

Емý идѣтъ двáдцать пёрвый годъ

He is in his twenty-first year.

Мнѣ тpидцать лѣтъ óтроду.

I am thirty years old.

Емý бóлѣе двáдцати-восьмí лѣтъ

He is over twenty-eight.

Емý ужé зá сорокъ лѣтъ.

He is over forty.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

Сейчасъ безъ чѣтверти дѣвять.

It is a quarter to nine.

Сейчасъ половѣна одѣннадцатаго.

It is half past ten.

Сейчасъ безъ десяти (минутъ) двѣнадцать.

It is ten minutes to twelve.

Онъ уѣхалъ въ сорокъ девяти послѣ четырехъ.

He went away at 4.49.

### V. *Fractions.*

There is little to add under this head, but the student must specially note the compounds with полъ, полу, a half. полъ as a regular noun signifies sex or half.\*

e.g. мужской полъ the male sex  
пополамъ by halves

(1) When the compound signifies half of a whole, the nominative has пол- with the substantive in the genitive; the other cases are declined regularly with the prefix полу-.

e.g. полчаса́ half an hour, полу́часа, полу́часу, etc.  
полверсты́ half a verst, полуверсты́, полуверстѣ́

Thus, too, полдень́ mid-day, полночь́ midnight;  
полу́дня, полу́ночи, etc.

After the preposition по, the locative of полдень́ is полу́дни (a relic of the time when день́ was a feminine like кость); e.g. нѣско́лько мину́тъ по полу́дни a few minutes after noon.

Thus, too, полтора́ [v. § 62, IV. (8)].

---

\* Distinguish полъ floor, and пола́ skirt.

It is most important to distinguish полднѣ, полнóчи, half a day, half a night, which signify duration, not a point of time.

In these words *only* the first element is declined, the second already being in the genitive.

e.g. Я бóдрствовалъ полднѣ, полнóчи, полчасá, etc.

I sat up half a day, half a night, half an hour, etc.

In older Russian, as in German, there were other compounds with полу-, for  $2\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $3\frac{1}{2}$ , etc., viz. полтретьяго,  $2\frac{1}{2}$ , etc.

These are obsolete. Modern Russian, like English, says два съ полови́ной, etc. [v. § 62, IV. (8).]

e.g. Пóслѣ полуминúты э́той рабóты она́ устáла.

After half a minute of this work she was tired.

In this connection the word сýтки, сýтокъ, may be noticed, meaning the whole day, i.e. 24 hours, including день day and ночь night.

(2) Where “half” is used loosely, and not in terms of strict measurement.

These are compounds prefixed with полу- invariable.

e.g. полуóстровъ	a peninsula
полу́мѣсяцъ	a crescent moon
полутóмъ	a half-volume
(but полтóма, полутóма	half of a volume)
полу-официáльный	semi-official, etc.

VI. *Russian money.*

The unit is the рубль (рубля́) or цѣлко́вый, worth about two shillings. [v. § 4 (9).]

The divisions are as follows:—

90	соpекs	девяно́сто копѣекъ	or	де́вять	грѣвень
80	„	во́семьдесятъ	„	„	во́семь „
70	„	се́мьдесятъ	„	„	се́мь „
60	„	шестьдеся́тъ	„	„	шесть „
50	„	пятьдеся́тъ	„	„	полти́на or полти́нникъ
40	„	со́рокъ	„	„	четы́ре грѣвенника
30	„	три́дцать	„	„	три „
25	„	два́дцать пять	„	„	четверта́къ
20	„	два́дцать	„	„	двугрѣвенный
15	„	пяти́надцать	„	„	пяти́-алты́нный
10	„	де́сять	„	„	грѣвенникъ
5	„	пять	„	„	пятачѣкъ
3	„	три копѣйки	„	„	алты́нь*
2	„	двѣ „	„	„	грошъ
1	„	копѣйка	„	„	
$\frac{1}{2}$	„	полкопѣйка	„	„	де́нежка
$\frac{1}{4}$	„	че́тверть копѣйки	„	„	полу́шка

VII. *Frequencies.*

Besides *одна́жды*, etc., there are some other locutions that should be noticed.

(1) In the multiplication table *еди́ножды* is used instead of *одна́жды*, and *четы́режды* is retained for this purpose. From five onwards the instrumental of the numeral is used, but is accented *пя́тью*, *ше́стью*, *во́семью*, *де́вятью*, *оди́ннадцатю*, etc., and *not* on the ultimate, as usual.

\* Obsolete.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read  
for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



## § 82. THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative Pronouns.*

These are used as in English, **кто** referring to persons, like “who”; **что** to inanimate objects and neuters like “what,” and **ко́торый** corresponding to “which.”

*Note*, however, that in English the genitive precedes the noun by which it is governed; in Russian it follows. [v. § 69, IV. (3).]

e.g. Johu's house. **До́мъ Ива́на.**

Thus: **Въ до́мъ ко́раго мужика́ ты вошёлъ?**

Into which peasant's house did you go?

II. *The Relative Pronouns.*

As in English, the interrogative and relative are now identical in form.

**кто** is used when the subject is a person, or in correlative and indefinite sentences, answering to **то́тъ**, **вся́кій**, **всѣ́**.

e.g. **То́му, кто лжётъ, не вѣ́рятъ.**

A liar is not believed.

**Всѣ́, кто прѣ́были, изуми́лись.**

All who arrived were astounded.

**что** is similarly used, when the generality is not personal.

e.g. **Всѣ́ что ты сказа́лъ—дура́чество.**

All you have said is folly.

Otherwise, for nouns *ко́рый* is used ; and, as always in Russian, the *génitive* follows and never precedes.

e.g. Опáсности, ко́рымъ я подвергáлся.

The dangers I have risked.

До́мъ, крýша ко́раго свесенá вѣтромъ.

The house the roof of which has been carried off by the wind.

*како́й* may be substituted, where the sense allows ; it means “such as.”

*Observe.*—The relative is *never* omitted as in English. But in common parlance *что* in the nominative tends to replace *кто* and *ко́рый* for all numbers and genders. This is not an admitted literary use.

e.g. Э́то тотъ са́мый ни́щій, что приходи́ль къ вамъ у́тромъ.

This is the same beggar as visited you in the morning.

### III. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are of two kinds ; first, *кто* and *что*, etc., unaccented (cf. in Greek *τις, τι*, contrasted with *τίς, τί*), and next, compounded pronouns with *то*, *ни*, and other particles. [v. § 85 on negative sentences.]

e.g. Всѣ что ни есть.\*

Anything whatsoever.

Скóлько ни рабóтали.

However much they worked.

---

\* *ни* as compared with *не* is like the Latin *nē*, Greek *μή*, e.g. *πάν ὅ,τι ἂν ἦ* or *μὴ ἦ* whatever it may [not] be.



Кѣмъ бы ты ни роди́лся, ты всѣтаки обяза́нъ пови́новаться зако́ну.

Whatever you were born, you must obey the law.

Кто́-нибу́дь.

Whoever it may be.

Кто́-нибу́дь пусть принесе́тъ ми́ стакáнъ воды́.

Let somebody bring me a glass of water.

(бу́дь imperative of бы́ть; v. § 57, II. and 41, VI.)

The distinction between *како́й-то...* and *како́й ни* is almost identical with the English "some" and "any": someone (but I don't know who exactly); anyone (and there is no discrimination nor knowledge of any individual).

#### IV. *The Reciprocal Pronouns.*

To express "each other," "one another," there are two phrases: *другъ дру́га, одинъ друго́й*. *другъ дру́га* is used for *all* genders and numbers. The latter part of the phrase is varied, to be in agreement with the verb or sentence.

e.g. Онѣ ненави́дѣли другъ дру́га.

They hated each other.

Онѣ спо́рили другъ съ дру́гомъ.

They quarrelled with each other.

*другъ дру́жку* (from *дру́жка*, feminine) is popularly also in use.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

## § 83. THE RUSSIAN APPELLATIVES.

Under this head a few notes will be found, as to the Russian methods of speaking to others, writing to others, and addressing letters.

I. *Conversation.*

Intimate friends and relatives use the pronoun ты; the politer form is вы. The Russian for “tutoyer,” “dutzen,” is ты́кать.

вы takes a predicative adjective in the plural.

e.g. вы о́чень любéзны you are very kind (*unlike* the French “vous êtes très aimable”)

But a noun following is in the singular, as in French, e.g. вы мой лу́чшій другъ you are my best friend.

Servants when speaking *of* their masters use the 3rd person plural.

e.g. Дóма-ли ба́ринъ (и́ли ба́рышня)?

Is your master (mistress) at home?

Онѝ ушли́.

He (she) has gone out.

Russians in addressing one another use not the family name, but the Christian name and patronymic.

Russians have three names: the Christian name, the patronymic, i.e. the father's name, and the family name.

e.g. Лёвъ Никола́евичъ Толсто́й.

The “patronymic” ends in -овичъ (-евичъ) or -овъ (-евъ) (for the lower classes) in the masculine,\* and -овна (-евна) and -ова (-ева) in the feminine.

The Christian name is called *имя*, the patronymic *отчество*, the family name *фамілія*.

e.g. Какъ зову́тъ васъ по имени, отчеству, фами́ліи ?  
 Какъ ва́ше имя, (ва́ше) отчество, (ва́ша)  
 фами́лія ?

In ordinary narration and conversation all classes are designated by the name and patronymic.

e.g. При Пикола́ѣ Алекса́ндровичѣ.

In the reign of Nicholas II.

Вчера́ я встрѣ́тилъ Ма́рью Алексе́евну.

Equivalent to “yesterday I met Mary,” or  
 “yesterday I met Mrs. or Miss . . .”

The Russian equivalents for Mr., Mrs., Monsieur, Madame, are *господи́нь* (plural *господа́*), and *госпожа́*. The use of them is very much more restricted than in other European languages.

*Господи́нь*, *госпожа́*, are only employed when the relationship is distant. Thus, the master of a factory would address his equal (whose name we will suppose to be *Васи́лій Па́вловичъ Перепе́лкинъ*) as *Васи́лій*

---

\* The patronymic is accented like the name from which it is derived; where monosyllabic names throw the accent on to terminations, or the termination can be accented, the accent is similarly thrown forward in the derivative. E.g. *Тома́*, *Томи́чъ*; *Кузьма́*, *Кузьми́чъ*; *Са́вва*, *Са́ввичъ*; *Пе́тръ* (*Петра́*), *Петро́вичъ*; *Алекса́ндръ* (*Алекса́ндра*), *Алекса́ндровичъ*. A few feminines are formed in -ична, e.g. *Томи́ниш(ч)на*, *Са́ввиш(ч)на*, *Кузьми́ниш(ч)на*; *Лука́*, *Луки́ниш(ч)на*; *Ники́та*, *Ники́тиш(ч)на*.

Пáвловичъ; an underling (such as a clerk) as Господи́нъ Перепёлкинъ; a mere workman or lower servant as Васи́лий. He would not address him as Перепёлкинъ, unless he were a superior giving a direct command to an inferior; e.g. the master speaking to a foreman.

Again, if a doctor is introduced, he will commonly be addressed as до́кторъ (as we say “colonel” or “lieutenant” or “doctor”), unless he is of higher standing, when the polite form would be господи́нъ до́кторъ.

When comparative strangers address one another, they will say господи́нъ Ба́шкинъ; as they approach intimacy, they will use the form Илья́ Кузьми́чъ; and as close friends, Илья́; but seldom Ба́шкинъ, as in other languages, the surname.

## II. *Between masters and servants.*

The servant speaks of his master and mistress, and their daughter, respectively as ба́ринъ, ба́рыня, ба́рышня.

In shops, restaurants, etc., an attendant calls the customers or masters су́дарь, судáрыня (an abbreviation of госуда́рь, госуда́рыня), or adds an enclitic съ; these phrases are equivalent to the English “sir” and “madam.”

e.g. Слу́шаю-съ. I hear you, sir.

Да-съ. Yes, sir.

Что прика́жете-съ? What are your orders, sir?

This съ is supposed to be an abbreviation of су́дарь.

The master and mistress (*patron* and *patronne*) of a business house are хозя́инъ, хозя́ева.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read  
for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



Dukes (князь) have the title сіятельство (brilliance).

e.g. Егó Сіятельство Князь Пáвель Петрóвичь Долго-  
ру́кій.

Earls and barons are also styled сіятельство.

e.g. Его Сіятельство Графъ (графіня) . . . .

The civil ranks are as follows:—

Егó Высокoпревосходітельство (excellency), for a  
Дѣйствітельный Тайный Совѣтникъ (something  
like a Privy Councillor; also called Стáтскій  
Генерáль).

Егó Превосходітельство, for a Тайный Совѣтникъ.

Егó Высокорóдіе, for a Статскій Совѣтникъ.

Егó Высокоблагорóдіе, for a Коллѣжскій Секретáрь,  
and for the lower ranks.

Егó Благорóдіе.

In the army, ranks from a порúчикъ (lieutenant) to  
a штабъ-капитáнь (captain) are styled Егó Благорóдіе;  
from a капитáнь to полкóвникъ, Егó Высóко-благорóдіе;  
from a general of infantry to a general-lieutenant,  
Егó Превосходітельство.

In the Church, the regular clergy are styled Высокo-  
преподóбіе, преподóбіе, высокопреосвященство, преосвя-  
щенство, according to rank; the lower orders being  
called благословѣніе.

Persons not titled are addressed господінь, госпожá,  
followed by the full name; often the господінь,  
госпожá, is omitted on envelopes.

As stated in § 67, Russian concord follows sense and not form, unlike French and German.

e.g. Его Превосходительство изво́лила прибѣ́ть.

His Excellency has arrived (deigned to arrive)

Ея́ Импера́торское Вели́чество Госуда́рыня  
говори́ла что . . .

Her Imperial Majesty the Empress said . . .

*Contrast*—“*Sa Majesté le roi est arrivée.*” “*Que désire-t-elle?*” In Russian, что хотите.

These titles must be used in combination with the name of the office.

e.g. Его́ Высокoпревосходительству́ Господи́ну  
Мини́стру Нарóднаго Просвѣ́щенія́ (Путе́й  
сообщéвiй).

To his Excellency the Minister of Public  
Education (communications).

In a private letter—

Его́ Высокoпревосходительству́ Арка́дию Миха́й-  
лови́чу Ра́зину.

To his Excellency Arkádi Mikhailovič Rázin.

V. In addressing letters the full titles are inserted, in the dative, with or without къ.

e.g. In a private letter, Его́ Превосходительству́  
(or Высокoпревосходительству́) Никола́ю  
Семёновичу Пугачёву.

If official, Его́ Высокoпревосходительству́  
Господи́ну Нача́льнику́ Либа́во-Ро́менской  
желѣ́зной доро́ги, Никола́ю Семёновичу  
Пугачёву.

To his Excellency the director of the Libáva-  
Romeny railway. . . .



Where there is no title, any of these three forms are applicable:—

Егó Высокорóдію Николáю Петрóвичу госпо-  
д́ину Пивовáрову.

Николáю Петрóвичу Пивовáрову.

Or simply, Николáю Петрóвичу господ́ину Пивовáрову.

Next follows the name of the street and number, then the house, lastly the town and country.

e.g. Егó Сіятельству Князю Семёну Аркадіевичу  
Долгорúкому,  
Мѣховáя ўлица, No. 18,  
Домъ Бáшкина,  
въ Москвѣ.

Letters addressed abroad are marked: за граніцу, beyond the frontier.

The letter is usually headed with some honorific adjective.

e.g. When very formal, Мілостивая Госудáрыня, Госпожá Шáхматова; when less stiff, Мілостивая Мáрья Еф́имовна; if friendly, Многоуважáемая Мáрья Еф́имовна; if intimate, Дорогáя or Люб́езная Мáрья Еф́имовна.

Thus the English equivalent of Многоуважáемая Мáрья Еф́имовна, would in this case be "Dear Mrs. or Miss Šákhmatov."

The conclusion of the letter would be as follows:—

Съ соверш́еннымъ почт́ениемъ.

Готóвый къ услúгамъ.

(or, informally) Вашъ

Васі́лій Пивовáровъ.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

(2) In composition with negative pronouns [v. § 40 (1), § 41, VII. and § 82, V.]. Such pronouns, e.g. *никако́й*, also need a verb negatived with *не*.

(3) With the indefinite pronouns [v. § 82, III.].

*не* is used:—

(1) To express the negation of a verb in all tenses and moods.

e.g. *Не трогай меня́, когда́ я шью.*

Do not touch me, when I am sewing.

(2) With adjectives to negative their meaning. Notice in this connection that Russian possesses no such distinction of negatives as English or Latin; e.g. between non-essential, unessential, illogical, non-logical, insensate, nonsensical (the distinction generally being that an adjective negatived with “un-” or “in-” implies the absence of the positive qualities; whereas the non-compound excludes the compatibility of that quality with some other object).

Such a distinction must be otherwise expressed.

e.g. Your statement is unreasonable.

*Твоё объяснѣніе неразу́мно.*

Caterpillars are irrational, non-rational beings.

*Гусеницы—это безразу́мныя существа́.*

*Неопредѣлённыя зада́чи* indefinite, undefined tasks.

*Безпредѣльныя простран́ства* infinite—endless—horizons.

*Observe* (as stated in § 41, VII.) that in Russian a double negative asseverates, and does not annul as in English.

e.g. *Я не встрѣчалъ никого́* I met no one.

An apparent exception exists, when the negatives belong to separate verbs or as stated above.

e.g. Это было встрѣчено, какъ нѣчто такое, что должно́ было случиться, что не могло́ не случиться.

This was faced as something that must have come about, that could not not have come about (have failed of coming about).

(3) не, in combination with certain pronouns, forms negative pronouns.\*

The pronouns are кто, что, когда́, куда́, etc. (i.e. those on the first line § 40 (2) ).

In this usage не stands for нѣтъ there is not.

e.g. Нечего́ дѣлать.  
There is nothing to do.

(but Я не дѣлалъ ничего́.  
I was doing nothing.)

Мнѣ́ не́ къ кому́ обрати́ться.  
I have no one to turn to.

Ему́ не́ на чёмъ осно́вывать его́ наде́жды.  
He has nothing on which to build up hopes.

*The preposition is always inserted between the negative and the pronoun, as with никто́, etc.*

Observe, in the past or future tense the verb “to be” must be inserted.

e.g. Не́ чего́ бу́детъ (было) дѣлать.

*Lastly*, the reader is cautioned to distinguish between this use of не, as a separable negative, and нѣ the indefinite prefix; e.g. нѣкто somebody, нѣкоторый, etc. [v. § 40 (2).]

---

\* This use of не, formerly нѣ, is probably derived from не е there is not; е in older Slavonic being an unaccented form of есть.

## § 86. THE VERB "TO BE."

In the present tense the verb "to be" is generally omitted. In any case the forms *есмь, еси, есмы, есте*, are obsolete, and *суть* is only rarely found; *есть*, when necessary, replacing all the persons and numbers.

e.g. Я здоро́вь I am well.

Ты негода́й you are a scaregrace.

Они́ во́ры they are thieves.

Ба́рина нѣтъ до́ма master is not at home.

However, the "copula" in the present sometimes must be stated.

(1) *Есть* regularly stands for "there is," "there are."

e.g. *Есть на свѣтѣ худы́я лю́ди.*

There are evil people in the world.

The negative of *есть* in this sense is *нѣтъ*. [v. § 85.]

(2) *Есть* and *суть* sometimes are used to assert existence.

e.g. *Богъ есть : а́нгелы суть.*

God *is* : the angels *are*.

But it is better to use the verb *существова́ть*.

e.g. *Всегда́ существую́тъ нѣско́лько исклю́че́ній для  
вся́каго пра́вила грамма́тики.*

There are always some exceptions to every rule of grammar.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



*In every other tense and mood* the verb **быть** is used, but the predicate put into the dative or instrumental, according to sense.

e.g. **Онъ былъ банкиромъ** (present **онъ банкиръ**)  
а тепёръ онъ торговецъ селёдками.

He was a banker and is now selling herrings.

**Нашёствие Татáръ было несчастьемъ для Рýси.**

The incursion of the Tatars was a misfortune to Russia.

**Когда бывáете (бýдете) дóма?**

When are you at home as a rule?

When will you be at home?

It should, however, be observed that in the present the word **вотъ** is used like the French *voici, voilà*, or the Italian *ecco*.

e.g. **Вотъ вашъ братъ котóрый опоздáль.**

There is your brother who was late.

### § 87. THE VERB "TO HAVE."

In Russian there is no verb which can be exactly translated "to have."

The verb "to have" is replaced by **у меня есть, былъ, etc.**

e.g. **У меня [есть] (было or были) три граммáтики рýсского языка.**

I have (had) three grammars of the Russian language.

ИМѢТЬ “to possess” or “own” is also used in this sense.

e.g. Съ кѣмъ имѣю честь говорѣть?

With whom have I the honour of speaking?

Otherwise, имѣть means “to own”; cf. имѹщество property.

e.g. У меня есть собствѣнный домъ.

I have a house of my own.

*But* Имѣю собствѣнный домъ.

I have (i.e. own as my property) a house belonging to me.

### § 88. SPECIAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE.

The infinitive has a special idiomatic use as a sort of general fatalistic future; the construction is impersonal, the logical subject and the predicate both being put in the dative.

e.g. Имъ не забѣть своихъ дѣтей.

They shall not forget their children.

Такимъ образомъ никому не быть богаты.

In this fashion no one gets rich. [v. § 34 (1).]

Ну, хорошо что ты ко мнѣ зашелъ; а то не бывать тебѣ живому.

It is well for you you came to me; otherwise you would not be alive.

*Observe* the dative adjective may be in the simple or attributive form; the instrumental is also allowable; thus in the instance above, *такимъ образомъ . . . богатымъ*.

The infinitive *may* be used as a noun, as in English.

e.g. To fly on an aeroplane is a great pleasure.

Летѣть на аэропланѣ—это большое удовольствіе.\*

---

\* *Observe* aviator is лѣтчикъ.



But the verbal noun in -*nie* is generally substituted in the nominative, and always in the oblique cases.

e.g. To suffer is our truest experience.

Страда́ние — на́ше са́мое и́стинное испыта́ние.

By trying you will succeed.

Стара́ниемъ тебѣ́ уда́тся.

## § 89. THE USE OF GERUNDIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

### I. *The Gerundives.*

The two gerundives, present and past, can only refer to the subject\* of the sentence, and are used as indeclinable participles.

e.g. Бродя́ по у́лицѣ, я встрѣ́тилъ Ива́на Я́ков-  
левича.

Whilst wandering along the street I met  
Iván Yákovleviĭ.

Чита́я А́нну Ка́ренину, я пла́кала.

On reading Ánne Karénina, I cried.

Заплати́въ свои́ долги́, я почу́вствовала себѣ́  
свободо́ю.

Having paid my debts I felt free.

### II. *The participles, present and past.*

These are used in agreement with a noun.

e.g. Въ ко́мнатѣ́ было́ ти́хо, то́лько шелестѣ́ли  
перевора́чиваемыя листы́.

It was quiet in the room, only the leaves (of  
the book) rustled as they were turned over  
(present participle passive).

---

\* The historical explanation of this rule is that the "gerundives" are the shorter (predicative) form of the nom. sing. masculine of the active participles.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

e.g. **вѣдимый** visible, **двѣжимый** moveable  
**сгараемый** incendiary, **нелюбимый** unlovable

Abstracts from these are formed in **-ость**, etc.

**неотъемлемость** imprescriptibility  
**неотмѣняемость** irrevocability

The past participle passive *may* also bear this same secondary meaning, e.g. **несравненный** incomparable.

As a general rule these gerundives and participles are used much like the English forms in “-ing.”

## § 90. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

### I. *Temporal.*

There being no moods in the Russian verb, temporal conjunctions merely govern the same forms as are used in principal clauses.

There are some few independent forms, such as **когда́** when, **пока́** until; most of the conjunctions are compounds with **что**; cf. in French *quand*, but *quoique*, *bienque*, *lorsque*, etc., all formed with *que*.

**когда́** means “when” generally; **пока́** is followed by “**не**,” as in French.

e.g. **Пока́ Нѳвиковъ не уѣзжалъ изъ Москвы́.**

Until Novikov left Moscow, “*jusqu’à ce que Novikov ne quittât Moscou.*”

But temporal conjunctions are mostly formed with the appropriate preposition governing a case of **тогь**, **то**,

followed by *какъ* or *что*; e.g. *между тѣмъ какъ* while, *въ то́мъ что* exactly when, *по то́мъ что*, *послѣ того́ какъ* after, *до того́ какъ* until, *отъ того́ что* after which . . .

### II. *Causal conjunctions, etc.*

These are all formed prepositionally; e.g. *потому́ что* because, *для того́ что́бы* with the object of, *кро́мѣ того́ что* besides which, *послѣ того́ какъ* after (causal), *прот́ивъ того́, что* against the fact that . . ., etc., very much like the German “wogegen,” “indem,” “nachdem,” etc.

### III. *Conditional clauses.*

The clause prefaced by “if” is called the protasis, the principal sentence is called the apodosis.

The regular method is to prefix the protasis with *если*, in common parlance *ко́ли*.

When the past tenses are used, the particle *бы*\* *may* be added to the protasis, and must be added to the apodosis. *бы* is enclitic and can be abbreviated to *бъ*, e.g. *еслибъ*.

The apodosis is also frequently prefaced by the particle *то*, which stands first in the sentence, like the German “wenn . . .” “so.” This *то*, like *so*, is left untranslated in English.

---

\* *Бы* in modern Russian is a particle creating the sense of a conditional tense (“I would have,” “should be,” etc.). It is originally the 2nd and 3rd person sing. preterite of *быть* (formerly *я быхъ, ты, онъ бы*). In Old Russian the compound tense *быхъ быль* was a regular conditional like *j'aurais été, j'eusse été*.

The tense sequence is as in English.

e.g. **Если васъ посѣщѹ, то приведу мою сестру.**  
If I visit you, I will bring my sister.

**Если-бъ случилась такая бѣда, то я увѣдомилъ-бы васъ объ этомъ.**  
If such a misfortune happened to me, I would acquaint you of it.

When the events stated in protasis and apodosis are both unreal, **бы** is repeated in both.

e.g. **Если-бъ я простудился, я не могъ бы окончить свою книгу.**

If I had caught cold, I should not have been able to finish my book.

The infinitive may be used in either clause as stated in § 88.

e.g. **Если бы мнѣ звѣтъ.**

If I had known.

**Если идти направо.**

If we are to go to the right, . . . .

The protasis may be *irregularly* introduced:—

(1) By two disjointed verbs.

e.g. **Разбогатѣю, заплачѹ; не разбогатѣю, не заплачѹ.**

If I grow rich, I will pay; if I don't, I shan't.

(2) By the imperative uninflected for any person  
[v. § 91].

e.g. **Знай я это раньше, я бы не написалъ.**

Had I known this sooner, I would not have written.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



### V. *Reported Speech.*

In English reported speech goes into the tense of the principal verb, with the necessary change of person.

e.g. "He said that he was going to visit his cousin if time permitted." The remark in direct narration would be "I am going to visit my cousin, if time permits."

The same rule does not altogether apply to Russian. Russian has only one past tense, so that there is no difference corresponding to "I *have* seen," "I said I *had* seen." Further, there is no reported future tense, "was going to visit," "would visit." Consequently the above sentence in Russian would run: "Онъ сказа́лъ что посѣтитъ своего двоюроднаго брата е́сли у него́ бу́детъ вре́мя" (present tense in reported speech).

Or again, "He said he had seen the Tsar." His remark was "I have seen the Tsar"; however, in Russian, "I saw," "have seen," and "had seen" are all alike, уви́дѣлъ. Consequently the Russian would be: "Онъ сказа́лъ что ви́дѣлъ Царя́."

Lastly, in reporting the present tense, Russian, like English, sometimes may change to the past.

e.g. He said he was writing a letter to his mother  
(I am writing . . . .).

Онъ сказа́лъ что писа́лъ письмо́ къ ма́тери, *or*  
*better* что пи́шетъ.

Consequently, in reporting an action with a verb in the past, Russian does not, because it cannot, change the tense.

In reporting a speech with a future tense Russian must use the future, as it has no indirect form of expressing the future.

In reporting a speech with a verb in the present, Russian can retain the present, changing the person, *or* may use the past tense.

In reporting an imperative, the imperative must be treated like a future.

e.g. They said they would murder Cæsar (i.e. Let us murder Cæsar).

Онѣ́ сказа́ли что убу́югъ Цѣ́заря (сказа́ли, да убу́емъ *or* убу́емте Цѣ́заря).

In reporting a question, the same changes of person and tense must be used, but the particle *ли* is affixed to the first word of the subordinate clause, unless some other interrogative word be there instead. [v. § 84.]

e.g. He asked Peter would his (Peter's) sister be going out as a nurse.

He asked Peter when his sister had lost her money.

He asked Peter whether his sister was ailing.

In direct speech—

Will your sister be going out as a nurse?

When did your sister lose her money?

Is your sister ailing?

In Russian—

Онъ спроси́лъ Петра́, пойдётъ-ли его́ сестра́ въ ня́ньки. [v. § 69, III.]

Онъ спроси́лъ Петра́, когда́ его́ сестра́ потеря́ла ея́ де́ньги.

Онъ спроси́лъ Петра́, не больна́-ли его́ сестра́.

In all these cases the only change is in the person, none in the tense.



Similarly—

He said “could one believe a German.”

Онъ сказа́лъ, “ра́звѣ мо́жно вѣ́рить Нѣ́мцу.”

These are the usual methods of reporting speech in Russian. A few idiomatic usages must still be discussed. Three particles, *де*, *мо́ль* and *де́ска́тъ* (or *ди́ска́тъ*), and in vulgar Russian, *грю*, *гришь*, *гритъ*, *грили* (abbreviations of *говори́ю*), are used like the vulgar English, “’e sez,” to indicate a reported speech; *де*, *мо́ль*, *ди́ска́тъ* are all three abbreviations of words bearing the same meaning, “he said”; \* and are all popular in style.

These particles are used in reporting messages (where in Latin and Greek the accusative and infinitive would be employed).

e.g. Онъ говори́тъ: я мо́ль иска́лъ, да знать мо́ль нѣ́ту.

He says, “I looked, but could not find out.”

Объ ита́льнской а́рміи отзы́вался съ презри́тельной улы́бкой, какъ о вели́чьи́ да́же серьёзнаго внима́нія не заслу́живающей; мы-де её хоро́шо зна́емъ. [v. § 4 (7).]

He disparaged the Italian army with a contemptuous smile, as though speaking of a power not deserving serious attention; “we know all about it.”

Вы ду́мали запуга́ть меня́, Васи́лій Ива́новичъ; во́тъ деска́тъ, я его́ пугну́.

You thought you would frighten me, Vasili Ivánovič; you thought, “I will frighten him.”

---

\* These examples are partly taken from Boyer's *Manuel de la langue russe*.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

дай with the perfect future “if I only could.”

e.g. Вотъ дай унесу́ мѣшо́къ огу́рцо́въ, прода́мъ.

If I can carry off this sack of cucumbers, I will sell it.

дава́й with the infinitive.

e.g. Дава́й игра́ть. Let us play.

The answer may be дава́й! Let us! = Yes, please; willingly.

(2) As a preterite.\* The form is invariable, and expresses a sudden action.

e.g. Отку́да ни возьми́сь from out of the clouds.  
(Literally, from wherever it came.)

Съ го́ря да съ тоскѣ́ . . . я возми́ да всё ей  
разскажи́.

What with pity and grief I told her every-  
thing.

Чего́-жь бы я въ до́мѣ́ не зналъ? Кажѣ́сь, всё  
зна́ю.

What do I not know of at home? I think I  
know everything.

Поста́вила на столъ напѣ́тки и заку́ски ра́зные,  
и поу́тру ранѣ́хонько бу́дить и дава́й рас-  
пра́шивать.

She set various foods and drinks on the  
table; wakes up in the morning, and began  
asking [literally “and let me ask!”].

So, too, глядь he looked up, — lo! хватъ he seized;  
дѣрни, e.g. дѣрни мевя́ the idea occurred to me;  
угора́зди, e.g. угора́зди мевя́ the idea occurred to me.

---

\* This usage is in accord with the older grammar, which had a 3rd person singular preterite in this form.

(3) As a conditional, v. § 90, III. (2).

(4) One past tense, пошёль, is used as an imperative, equivalent to “get out.” The explanation is that the older language had the full form **будь пошёль** (будь imperative of **быть**).

e.g. **Пошли вонъ, дурачки!**  
Out you go, you fools!

### § 92. FURTHER ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE ASPECTS.

Russian has two future forms, perfective and imperfective.

e.g. **Въ будущемъ году буду заниматься химіей.**  
Next year I shall study chemistry.

**Завтра займусь музыкой.**

To-morrow I shall be busy with my music.

*Remember **буду** and **стану** can never be used with a perfective infinitive.*

The perfective implies definition of object, and completion of purpose; the imperfective the duration or method of the process.

Instances:—

**Лѣтомъ онъ ходилъ въ пальто** (imperfective).

In the summer he walked about in an overcoat.

(French “paletot”; indeclinable in Russian.)

**Онъ нерѣдко хаживалъ въ отцовскій домъ.**

He often went to his father’s house.

(The iterative, expressing discontinuous frequent action.)

Тотъ, котóрый прохáживается óколо éтого дóма  
отъ десяти часóвъ до полúдня назывáется  
Никíтинымъ.

The man who saunters round this house from  
10. to 12 a.m. is called Nikitin.

Онъ шёлъ въ Москвú he was going to Moscow.

Онъ пошёлъ на вокзáль.

He went to the railway station (perfective  
and definitive).

Я видáль вíды на своёмъ вѣкú!

I have seen wonderful things in my life!  
(imperfective; general).

Я увидáль Áнну на бáшнѣ.

I caught a sight of Anne on the tower (per-  
fective).

Я увíдѣль въ гостíнницѣ одногó знакóмаго.

I saw an acquaintance in the hotel.

(I.e. I just saw him for an instant; perfective.)

Тáмъ-же видѣль мнóго инострáнцевъ.

I also saw many foreigners there.

(There is no definiteness in the action.)

It has repeatedly been stated that the "aspects" are best understood as devices for supplementing the defective tense-system, there being in modern Russian no inflections save for the present tense. The following table illustrates this adaptation of the "aspects."

Very few verbs, if any, possess all the aspects; few possess as many as шептáть or выдирáть. The iterative is in such cases expressed by the present form, and the perfective signifies both the aoristic and a completed action in the past.

A few verbs have an "abstract" and "concrete" aspect; for these, v. §§ 59, I. (4) and 59, II. and III.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



*Perfect active.*

	To tear asunder.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	вѣдрать	
Verbal noun :	вѣдрание*	Same as
Part. indeclin. :	вѣдравъ, -авши	Aorist
Part. declinable :	вѣдравши	throughout.
Indicative :	вѣдраль	
Imperative :	вѣдри	

*Perfect.*

Part. passive :	{ вѣдранный вѣдиранный }	шептанный
-----------------	-----------------------------	-----------

*Aorist.*

Infinitive :	вѣдернуть	шепнуть
Verbal noun :	вѣдернүте*	шепнүте*
Part. indecl. :	вѣдернүвъ, -үвши	шепнүвъ, -үвши
Part. declinable :	вѣдернүвшій	шепнүвшій
Part. passive :	вѣдернүтый	шепнүтый
Imperative :	вѣдерни	шепни

*Future.*

Continuous :	бѣду вѣдирать	бѣду шептáть
Iterative :	„ „	бѣду шептывать*
Perfective :	вѣдру, -ёшь, -үть	Same as Aoristic.
Aoristic :	вѣдерну, -ешь, -уть	шепнү, -ёшь, -үть

*Conditionals* can be formed from any *past* tense by adding the particle бы.

---

\* Seldom used.

## § 93. AUXILIARY PARTICLES.

The Russian verb has only one past tense, and one present. It has been explained how the aspects supplement the tense system, the imperfective supplying an imperfect tense [v. § 42 (2) (i) and (ii), § 59, § 90, III., and § 92]; the perfective a past tense of completion, whether preterite perfect or pluperfect, and a determinate future; the iterative a tense to express frequency of action; and the abstract aspect the power as contrasted with the act. Further, the particle **бы** partially replaces the subjunctive mood.

There are other particles and auxiliaries used, e.g. **пусть, да, дай, давай** [v. § 91], principally with the imperative; and the use of some others, e.g. **давнó, было, бывáло, стáну, б́уду, будто, только, что**, is important.

(1) **давнó** (**дáвный** in the past) or **ужé** (already) is used to express the pluperfect.

e.g. **Онъ давнó искаль дóчку.**

He had long been searching for his daughter (imperfective).

**Ты ужé приготóвилъ об́едъ.**

You had prepared dinner (perfective).

(2) **б́уду**, as has been seen [§ 92], expresses the imperfective future [also v. § 58].

(3) **стáну** also expresses the imperfective future, but has a remoter meaning, like the English "I am going to . . ." or the French "je vais . . ."

e.g. **Стáну собирáть мой вéщи въ чемодáнь.**

I am going to pack my things in the portmanteau.



(4) *бўдто* or *какъ бўдто* means “as though.”

e.g. *Онъ всталъ какъ бўдто что́бы уходи́ть.*

He got up as though he were going out.

*Онъ улыбу́лся какъ бўдто его́ братъ пошутíлъ.*

He smiled as though his brother had made a  
joke

(5) *то́лько что* means “just.”

e.g. *Онъ то́лько что похороши́лъ своего́ отца́ какъ померла́ и мать.*

He had just buried his father, when his  
mother died.

(6) *быва́ло* with the past tense adds a meaning of “he used to do,” of a continuous practice.

e.g. *Я быва́ло посѣща́лъ э́ту семью́.*

I used to visit this family.

(7) *хотя́* (or *хоть*) is used for “though”; in combination with *бы* and a past tense, *бъ* when the sense imports unreality.

e.g. *Хотя́ ты былъ хўдены́кй, на́до было постарáться.*  
Though you were ill, you should have tried.

*Хотя́ я бўду въ Москвѣ́, но мнѣ́ нельзя́ бўдетъ повидáть ва́шихъ роди́телей.*

Though I shall be at Moscow, I shall not be  
able to see your parents.

*Хотя́-бъ я бы́лъ са́мымъ сильнѣ́йшимъ на свѣ́тѣ́, бѣ́дныхъ я-бъ не угнетáлъ.*

Even if I were the most powerful man on  
earth, I would not oppress the poor.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

Such verbs are used only in the 3rd person singular, as in Latin or Greek without *any* pronoun.

II. There is no one word for generality like “one,” “man,” “*on*”; either the 2nd person singular, or the 3rd person plural is used.

e.g. Говорятъ one says.

Чѣмъ болѣе стараешься, тѣмъ болѣе ошибаешься.  
The more one tries, the more mistakes one makes.

III. Russian has a predilection for impersonal construction in the passive with *ся* [v. § 60], the agent or subject being put into the dative.

e.g. хочѹ I wish, or мнѣ хочется ; видѣть I saw, мнѣ видѣлось ; спать to sleep, мнѣ спалось хорошо I slept soundly ; дѹмаю I think, мнѣ дѹмается I think ; жить to live, въ Англіи свободно проживается life is free in England.

As a rule the reflexive passive construction imports a remoteness or generality to the sentence, whereas the active records a precise and determinate fact.

### § 95. АПОСОПАТЕД FORMS OF SOME VERBS.

A few verbs signifying a brusque action or noise have an *invariable* form for the past tense.\*

E.g. the interjections ахъ! охъ! ухъ! эхъ! are sometimes used like parts of a verb, meaning “to cry out” ахъ, эхъ, etc.

---

\* In many cases very similar to the apocopated past of imperfectives in -нуть [v. § 50, II.], and the imperative preterites [v. § 91].

So, too, the past of inchoatives in -нуть; e.g. прыгъ jumped, стукъ knocked, and similarly бухъ bump.

e.g. Бухъ — поплыли въ водахъ глубокихъ.  
Plump — they swam in the deep waters.

Онѣ подошли къ дому и стукъ въ окно.  
They approached the house and rat-ta-tap-tap  
on the window.

Лиса пустилась къ лѣсу и юркъ въ нору.  
The fox started for the wood, and dashed into  
a hole.

### § 96. THE REFLEXIVE VERBS.

Under this head a few special phrases may be discussed. It has already been stated [§ 60] what the distinction is between passives and reflexives.

e.g. Этой войной разрушились всѣ ходячія литера-  
турныя представлѣнія.

In this war all the current literary notions  
were destroyed.

Уничтожали самѣхъ себя оба противника (от  
уничтожили, perfective).

Both combatants annihilated themselves.

Where an action is done for someone at his orders French uses the exact phrase “faire . . .”; English leaves it to be understood; the Russian usage will be illustrated by the example.

e.g. The workmen built a house.

L'ouvrier bâtit une maison.

Рабочій построилъ домъ.

*But* I have built a country-house.

Je me suis fait bâtir une maison de campagne.

Я построилъ себѣ усадьбу.

Женá ообу́лась.

The woman has put her shoes on.

Elle s'est chaussée, *or* elle s'est fait chausser.

Я побрѣюсь.

I will shave [myself] or be shaved.

Я брѣюсь самъ.

I shave *myself*.

Many verbs are reflexive in Russian, where they would not be so in English.

In the first place the reflexive indicates that the object is identical with the subject.

e.g. мѣ́ться to wash (oneself), обувáться to put on shoes, etc., одѣ́ваться to dress (oneself), etc.

In the second place [v. § 60] it indicates the passive (as in French).

e.g. Свирѣ́пости продолжа́ются.

Les barbaries se continuent (are being continued).

Я лишѣ́лся ма́тери.

I have lost my father.

Онъ лишѣ́лся жи́зни.

He has died.

Онъ лишѣ́лъ себя́ жи́зни.

He has committed suicide.

In the third place many verbs are naturally reflexive or deponent.

e.g. горди́ться чѣ́мъ to boast

бо́яться чегó to fear



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



Kinship is родствó.

Degrees of relationship стéпени родствá :—

General terms о́бщія назвáнiя.

прéдокъ	прéдки	ancestors
потóмки		descendants
рóдственникъ		kinsman
рóдственница		kinswoman
родъ (рóда)		family (genealogically)
семья́ (Фамiлiя)		a family

Special designations о́собыя назвáнiя :—

Lineal descent поколѣвiе нисходящее.

сынъ	son	} поколѣвiя по прямой линии generations in the direct line
дочь	daughter	
дѣти	children	
внукъ	grandson	
внучка	granddaughter	
внучáта	grandchildren [v. § 26 (5)]	
пáвнукъ, etc.	great grandson	

Lineal ascent поколѣвiе восходящее.

оте́ць *	father
мать	mother
родiтели	parents
дѣдъ	grandfather
ба́бушка (ба́бка)	grandmother
пáдѣдъ	great grandfather
пáбабушка	great grandmother
пáпáдѣдъ, etc.	great great grandfather
пáщуръ	great great great grandfather

\* Бáтюшка in familiar speech.

## Collateral relations побóчное родствó.

братъ *	brother
сестра́	sister
дядя	uncle
тётя, тётка	aunt
† стрый	uncle, paternal
† стры́я	aunt, paternal
† уй	uncle, maternal
† у́йка	aunt, maternal
† уецъ, у́йчичъ, -ечка	first cousin on father's side
† стрыйчичъ, -ечка	first cousin, maternal side
племянникъ, -ица	nephew, niece
братáничъ, ‡ -ица	nephew, niece, by brother
сестричъ, ‡ -ица	nephew, niece, by sister
двоюродный братъ (сестра́)	first cousin §
троюродный братъ	second cousin, and so on
двоюродный племян- никъ	first cousin once removed in second generation downwards

Similarly—

троюродная ба́бушка	great aunt
троюродный дѣдъ	great uncle

These words for relationship are, however, seldom used beyond the third generation; in ordinary language a third cousin would be родственникъ въ четвёртомъ колѣнѣ, a kinsman in the fourth generation.

\* Used colloquially to express friendly connection.

† All of these are obsolete or nearly so.

‡ Disused now.

§ I.e. a brother in the second generation.



## Relations by marriage родствó по бра́ку (сво́йствó\*).

*From the husband's side.**From the wife's side.*

Father-in-law	тесть	свёкорь
Mother-in-law	тёща	свекрóвь
Brother-in-law	шúринь <i>or</i> зять	дéверь
	[v. § 24 (2)]	
Sister-in-law	сво́йченица, <i>or</i> свeсть, <i>or</i> невѣстка	золóвка
Son-in-law	зять	зять
Daughter-in-law	спохá <i>or</i> невѣстка	сно́ха <i>or</i> невѣстка
Sister-in-law's husband	сво́йкъ	золóвкинъ мужъ
Wife of brother-in-law	ятровѣ†	ятровѣ†

I.e. my sister's husband is зять; my brother's wife невѣстка; but my wife's sister is свeсть *or* сво́йченица, and her husband сво́йкъ; my husband's sister золóвка. In English "brother-in-law," "sister-in-law," leave all these relationships indeterminate.

Other terms to be noted are:—

óтчимъ	step-father
мáчеха	step-mother
пáсынокъ	step-son
пáдчерица	step-daughter
свóдный братъ	step-brother
свóдная сестра́	step-sister

\* But сво́йство property.

† Obsolete.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

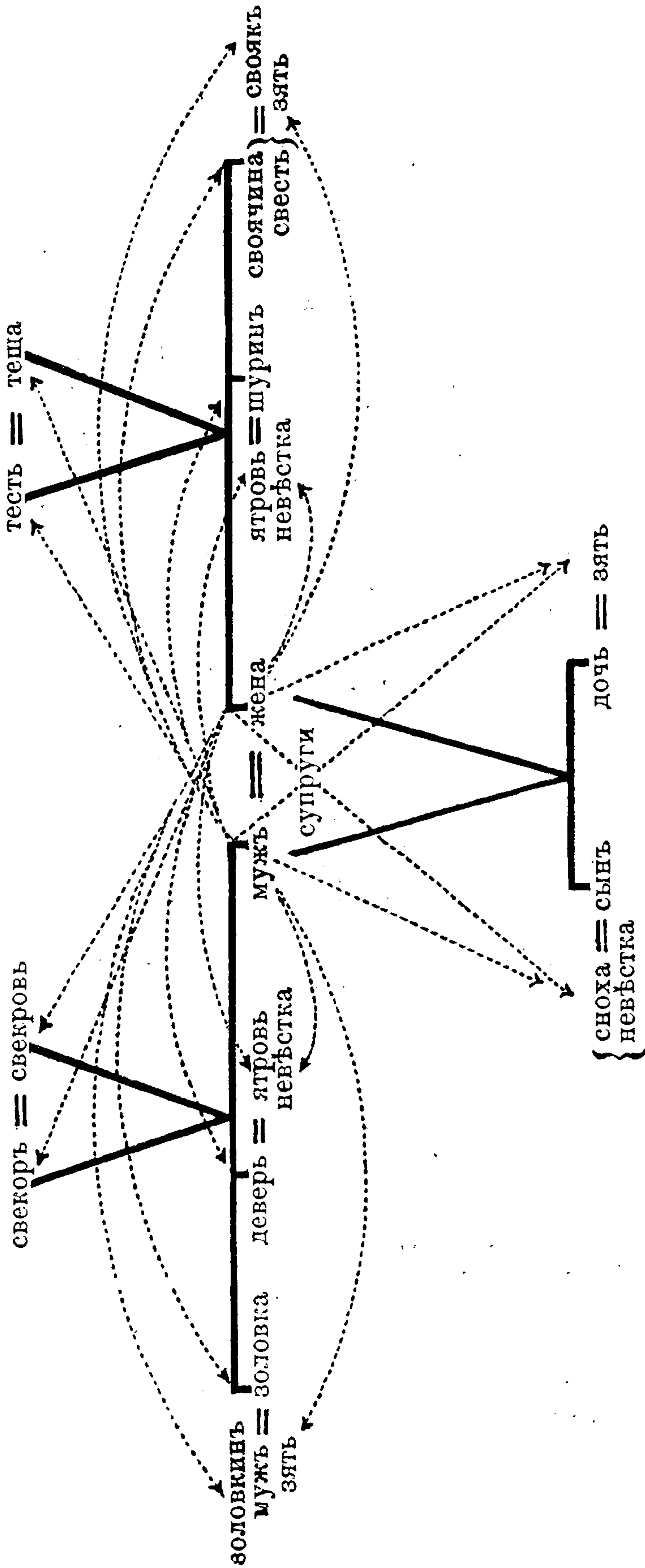
**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



TABLE OF AFFINITIES (Таблица Сво́йственниковъ).

Родители по бра́ку или по свойству́.



2

2 E.g. Женатые на двухъ сестёръ называются между собою своякѣ. Жёны двухъ братьевъ между собою ятрови.

Золовка это мужнина сестра. Шурьями называются женыны братья.

Зять имѣеть двоякое значеніе; онъ или сестринъ, или дочернинъ мужъ; такймъ-же образомъ невьстка есть, или братнина жена или сынонья.

## ETYMOLOGY.

Under this head a list of formatives of nouns, verbs, and adjectives is inserted in alphabetical order. Except for those few whose accentuation is fixed, i.e. either absolutely atonic, or else always stressed, and subject to special rules stated in the body of the grammar, the rule is that *these terminations are accented, whenever the primary form is capable of throwing its accent forward in any inflection* (e.g. столъ, столá and столáрь; but общій, обще, общество; товарищъ, товарищество); they are *unaccented, if the primary form has a fixed accent on its stem*. Thus, too, царь, царя, царьца; but начальникъ, начальника, начальница; работа, работникъ, работать, etc.

Some of the terminations are now “dead,” i.e. disused, except in survivals. When this is so, a special remark is made to this effect.

The letter ь will be found prefixed to many. This indicates that in composition the previous sounds, vowels or consonants, must be modified. [v. § 5.]

## § 98. THE NOUNS.

I. Foreign terminations in common use. These are few in number and easily learnt.

-’ція, in foreign words, = “-tion”; e.g. акція share, нація nation, позиція position. Always accented as shown.

-ёръ, i.e. the French “-aire” in foreign words; e.g. акционеръ. The plural is in -ы.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



## III. Patronymics.

-ичъ, in patronymics; feminine -ична. [v. § 83, I.]

-овичъ, -евичъ, in patronymics; feminine -овна,  
-евца. [v. § 83, I.]

-овъ, -евъ, in patronymics; feminine -ова, -ева.  
[v. § 83, I.]

## IV. Termination to denote the female.

-а; e.g. раба́ (рабъ) slave.

-ева; e.g. коро́ль king, королева́.

-ица, forming feminines and nouns from verbs;  
e.g. ви́сѣлица gallows, племя́нница niece.

-ша (never accented), denotes the wife of an official;  
e.g. фельдъ́егерша the wife of a state messenger,  
до́кторша the doctor's wife.

-ыня, -иня, feminine formation; e.g. геро́иня  
heroine, княги́ня countess, боги́ня goddess,  
суда́рыня, ба́рыня mistress.

## V. Abstract nouns.

-знь fem. (dead), forms abstracts; e.g. болѣ́знь  
illness.

-изна (dead), forms abstracts; e.g. отчи́зна father-  
land, новизна́ novelty.

-ина, abstracts from adjectives; e.g. глуби́на depth,  
годи́на time.

-ыня, -иня, forms abstracts from adjectives; e.g.  
горды́ня pride.

- ie (unaccented), forms abstracts from adjectives ;  
e.g. весéлье mirth.
- ость, -есть (never accented), forms abstract nouns  
of the third declension from adjectives,  
and retains accent of the adjective, unless it  
is oxytone ; e.g. скóрость, скóрый quick ;  
двѣжимость, двѣжимый moveable ; на́гость,  
нагóй naked ; свѣ́жесть, свѣ́жий freshness.
- та́ forms abstract nouns from adjectives ; e.g.  
быстротá speed, красотá beauty. Almost  
always accented as shown.
- щина (never accented), forms abstract nouns from  
nouns, descriptive of a state of affairs ;  
e.g. Облóмовщина Oblómovism (Oblómov, the  
hero of a novel by Gončarov) ; пугачёвщина,  
the state of rebellion induced by the rebel  
Pugačov ; Толстóвщина, Tolstoyan life.
- ство forms abstracts from adjectives and nouns.  
One of the commonest terminations ; e.g.  
лѣкарство medicine, товарищество society,  
воровствó thieving.

## VI. Verbal nouns.

- прóвка forms nouns of action from verbs in  
-ировать ; e.g. группирóвка the grouping,  
марширóвка the marching. Always thus  
accented.
- нiе (seldom accented), forming verbal nouns.  
[v. § 42 (2) (i).] Note, however, -нѣ (вравѣ,  
дравѣ).
- тiе (very seldom accented), verbal noun. [v. § 49, II.]



## VII. The agent or implement.

-акъ, -якъ, an agent; e.g. батра́къ workman, вожа́къ a leader. The accent is thrown forward in all the terminations. Always oxytone. [cf. § 25, I.]

-аръ, -яръ, an agent, derives nouns from nouns; e.g. столя́ръ joiner, боча́ръ cooper. The plural is in -а́.

-арь, an agent; e.g. зна́харь magician, понама́рь sexton.

-ецъ, agent or implement; e.g. при́имецъ a receiver, ва́лецъ a roller, бо́рецъ a wrestler.

-икъ, an agent. The nominative is accented according to the noun from which the word is derived, when the word is oxytone the accent is thrown forward in the oblique cases; e.g. алхи́микъ alchemist, разска́зчикъ narrator, ямщи́къ coachman.

-ка (unaccented), an implement; e.g. винто́вка a rifle, во́зка carrying.

-никъ, an agent, derived from adjectives and nouns, *v.* -икъ; e.g. алты́нникъ a miser, бары́шникъ a jobber, возни́къ a draught horse. Feminine -ница. When -и́къ is accented it throws the accent forward on to all the terminations.

-тель, an agent, forms nouns from verbs; e.g. учи́тель teacher, писа́тель writer. The termination is never accented, the accentuation follows the infinitive. Sometimes the words have a secondary meaning, e.g. указа́тель index.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

# Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of  
human knowledge in  
797,885 volumes

Instant access  
\$8.99/month

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies

-ечко, -ышко, -ушко (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from neuter nouns; e.g. со́лнышко (солнце), гнѣ́здышко.

-ышко, -ышко, neut., and -ышка, -ышка, feminine, (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives from nouns; e.g. селѣ́шко nasty little village, короты́шка pigmy, землі́шка barren piece of ground, городы́шко ugly little town.

(3) Feminines (and masculines) of the second declension.

-ька (unaccented), diminutive of feminines; e.g. жѣ́нка little woman; кнѣ́жка little book. This same termination forms diminutives of proper names; e.g. Са́шка (Александръ), Серѣ́жка (Сергѣ́й).

-енька (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from the second declension; e.g. ду́шевька (душá) little soul, darling.

-и́ца, -и́чка, forms diminutives of affection from feminine nouns; e.g. сестри́ца.

-очка, -ечка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from second declension; e.g. скаме́ечка little stool, ка́рточка visiting card.

-ушка, -юшка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from nouns of second declension; e.g. ма́тушка (ма́ть) mother, ба́тюшка (ба́тя) father.

-ёнка (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives; e.g. лошадёнка nasty little horse, коровёнка nasty little cow.

-ýша, -юша, -ýшка, -юшка (always accented), forms diminutives of depreciation from nouns of the second declension; e.g. Катюша from Катя Katy, Аксюша (from Аксiвiя).

### IX. Augmentatives.

-ище (masc. and neuter), -ища (feminine), forms augmentatives from nouns; e.g. домiще a big house (masc.); дýрища a great fool (feminine); полотнище a big piece of cloth.

In some nouns there is no augmentative sense; e.g. жилище abode, кладбище cemetery (generally accented on the first syllable), училище a school. When -ище is not an augmentative it is, as a rule, unaccented.

-ино, -ина, forms augmentatives from nouns, generally depreciatory; e.g. домiна a very big house.

### X. Miscellaneous.

-авинъ, -явинъ, mostly used to denote members of nations, religions, etc. [v. § 24 (5)] Accented either oxytone or paroxytone.

-ачъ, forms descriptive nouns; e.g. бородачъ a long beard, богачъ a rich man.

-ежъ (accented, disused), forms nouns from verbs; e.g. падeжъ case (падáть), грабeжъ plunder (грабiтъ); in the oblique cases падeжá, etc.

-ёнокъ, plural -ята, the young of animals; e.g. волченокъ, волчата wolf; галченокъ jackdaw; but щенокъ, щенята puppy; волчокъ wolf's cub. [v. § 26 (5).]

-ло, from verbs; noun describes action of verb and follows accent of the past tense in ль; e.g. нача́ло beginning, одѣ́яло blanket, вѣ́яло winnowing-fan, ва́яло chisel.

### § 99. ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES.

-авый (dead); e.g. лука́вый sly, велича́вый stately. Accented on termination -ав.

-ва́тый, a termination mainly used with adjectives denoting substance, generally accented -ва́тый; e.g. аляпова́тый clumsy, винова́тый guilty, витиева́тый eloquent.

-ова́тый, -ева́тый, added to adjectives, often has the sense of “-ish”; e.g. синева́тый bluish, бѣлова́тый whitish. Always thus accented.

-ви́тый, descriptive adjective (from nouns); e.g. гранови́тый faceted, дарови́тый talented.

-и́кий, adjectival suffix; e.g. вели́кий big.

-и́стый, from nouns, “resemblance”; e.g. золоти́стый gold-coloured, гли́нистый clayey.

-и́ческий forms adjectives mostly from words derived from Greek; e.g. ариѳмети́ческий arithmetical, практи́ческий practical. Accented as shown.



**THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS**

Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

**FORGOTTEN BOOKS**

**FULL**

**MEMBERSHIP**

**797,885 Books!**

**All you can read**

**for only**

**\$8.99/month**

**Continue**

\*Fair usage policy applies



-ЬСКІЙ, -ЬСКОЙ, forms adjectives of all sorts. There is no shortened predicative form. The accentuation is that of the noun from which the adjective is derived.

A few words accent -ьскóй; e.g. мужскóй male, людскóй public, городскóй civic.

-ЬНЫЙ, -ЬНОЙ, one of the commonest ways of forming adjectives of all sorts; e.g. больнóй ill, госудáрственный of the State, вáжный important.

-ИНЬ, forms possessive adjectives in the second declension; e.g. дядинь the uncle's. [v. § 34 (2).]

-Ѣйшій, -айшій, -ѣе, comparatives. [v. § 37.]

-ЯННЫЙ, -ЯНО́Й, adjectives of substance; e.g. водяно́й watery, деревя́нный wooden, ма́сляный buttery.

### § 100. VERBAL FORMATIONS.

-И́РОВАТЬ (third conjugation), used mainly in foreign words; e.g. атрофи́ровать to atrophy. [v. § 53 (3).]

-ИТЬ (fourth conjugation), forms transitive verbs; e.g. ста́рить to make old, бѣси́ть to drive frantic. [v. § 59, V.]

-НУТЬ, verbs of second conjugation. [v. § 50.]

-ЫВАТЬ, -ИВАТЬ, iterative verbs. [v. § 59, I. (4).]

-ѢТЬ (third conjugation), inceptive verbs; e.g. алы́ть to grow red, красне́ть to blush. [v. § 53 (2).]

With roots ending in ч, ш; щ, the termination is -ать, v. § 55, II.

LONDON:

PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,  
DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDMILL STREET, W.